SECOND EDITION

Chris Redston & Gillie Cunningham

face2face





Elementary Student's Book



CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi, Tokyo, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781107422049

© Cambridge University Press 2012

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2012

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-107-42204-9 Student's Book with DVD-ROM ISBN 978-0-521-28305-2 Workbook with Key ISBN 978-0-521-28306-9 Workbook without Key ISBN 978-1-107-65400-6 Teacher's Book with DVD ISBN 978-1-107-42206-3 Class Audio CDs

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

SECOND EDITION

face2face

Elementary Student's Book



Contents

Les	son		Vocabulary	Grammar	Real World
	come!	p6	numbers 0–20; the alphabet; things in		introducing yourself; classroom
			the classroom; days of the week		instructions; names; saying goodbye
1A	How are you?	p8	countries and nationalities	be (1): positive and Wh- questions; subject pronouns and possessive adjectives	introducing people
1B	Coffee break	coffee break p10 jobs; a and an		be (2): negative, yes/no questions and short answers	
1C	1C Personal details p12		numbers 20-100		asking for personal details; asking people to repeat things
1D	1D Lost property p14		personal possessions; plurals; this, that, these, those		
Extra	Practice 1 and Progress Po	ortfolio 1	p115 Self-study DVD-RO	M 1	
2A	2A What's important? p16		adjectives (1); adjective word order and <i>very</i>	have got: positive and negative, questions and short answers	
2B	The Browns	p18	family	possessive 's	
2C	Time and money	p20	time words		telling the time; talking about the time; saying prices; buying tickets at the cinema
2D	Where's the baby?	p22	things in a house; prepositions of place		
Extra	Practice 2 and Progress P	ortfolio :		M 2	
3A	My day	p24	daily routines	Present Simple (1): positive and Wh- questions (I/you/we/they)	
3B	Free time	p26	free time activities (1); time phrases with <i>on</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>at</i> , <i>every</i>	Present Simple (2): negative and yes/no questions (//you/we/they)	
3C	C Special days p28		months; dates		phrases for special days; talking about days and dates; suggestions
3D	Early bird?	p30	frequency adverbs	subject and object pronouns	
Extra	Practice 3 and Progress P	ortfolio :	3 p117 🚳 Self-study DVD-RO	M 3	
4A	Away from home	p32	free time activities (2)	Present Simple (3): positive and negative (he/she/it)	
4B	First Date!	p34 things you like and don't like; Present Simple (4): questions and		Present Simple (4): questions and short answers (he/she/it)	
4C	Eating out	p36	food and drink (1)		requests and offers
4D	Breakfast time	p38	food and drink (2); countable and uncountable nouns		
Extra	Practice 4 and Progress P	ortfolio (4 p118 🚳 Self-study DVD-RO	M 4	
5A	Three generations	p40	adjectives (2); years	Past Simple (1): <i>be</i> (positive and negative, questions and short answers)	
5B	Famous films	p42	life events	Past Simple (2): regular and irregular verbs (positive and Wh- questions)	
5C	Four weekends	p44	weekend activities		showing interest; asking follow-up questions
5D	Competitions	p46	adjectives (3); adjectives with <i>very</i> , <i>really</i> , <i>quite</i> , <i>too</i>		
Extra	Practice 5 and Progress P	ortfolio :		M 5	
6A	Google it!	p48	the internet	Past Simple (3): negative, <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers	
6B	Changing technology	p50	mobile phones and TVs; past time phrases	can/can't; could/couldn't	
6C	The news	p52	verbs from news stories		talking about the news
6D	Mario Man	p54	articles; a, an and the		
Extra	Practice 6 and Progress P	ortfolio (6 p120 🍪 Self-study DVD-RC	DM 6	

VIDEO See Teacher's DVD

	TIPLO OCC TCACHCI 3 BVI				
Speaking	Listening and Video	Reading	Writing		
Introducing yourself What's your first name? Saying goodbye	Conversations in a classroom First names and surnames				
Names and countries	At the conference	At the conference			
Phone numbers and jobs The conference list	Phone numbers What do you do?	Three conversations	Sentences about you		
Numbers Hiring a car	Help with Listening Sentence stress (1) VIDEO Hiring a car	Personal information	Filling in a form		
Things in the classroom					
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Word str	ess and syllables p15	Reading and Writing Portfolio 1	At the hotel Workbook p64		
Personal possessions	What's important to me? A survey in a shop	What's important to me?	My friend's possessions		
My family	Family photos Help with Listening Sentence stress (2)	The Brown family	Questions with <i>How many</i> ?		
Buying tickets	What time is it? Times and prices VIDEO At the cinema	Adverts for an exhibition and for a cinema			
Whose mobile phone is this? Where's Robbie's bag?	Where's the baby?		Sentences with prepositions		
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION The schw	va /ə/ in words p23	Reading and Writing Portfolio 2	My favorite thing Workbook p66		
Daily routines		Behind the camera	My daily routine Questions about routines		
Free time activities Find two people	The office party Help with Listening Weak forms (1): do you ?		Questions with Do you ?		
My important dates What shall we get her?	What's the date today? VIDEO A birthday present		Dates A conversation		
My habits	Early bird or night owl?	Early bird or night owl?			
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION How we	say th p31	Reading and Writing Portfolio 3 All about me Workbook p68			
My free time activities My partner's free time	Life at the observatory Help with Listening Linking (1)		Questions with Do you ?		
Things I like and don't like I've got a friend for you!	First Date!	First Date! Mark's first date	Questions with Does he/she ?		
My favourite café Ordering food and drink	Help with Listening Would you like? VIDEO At the Sun Café	A café menu Conversations in a café	A conversation in a café		
Breakfasts around the world My perfect breakfast	What's for breakfast?				
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ʃ/, /tʃ,	/ and / d ₃ / p39	Reading and Writing Portfolio 4 Going out Workbook p70			
When was he born? When I was thirteen	Albert's thirteenth birthday Help with Listening Weak forms (2): was and were	My birthday party	Questions with was and were		
Questions about the past My timeline	Help with Listening Present Simple or Past Simple	Cameron's world			
What I did last weekend Asking follow-up questions	VIDEO How was your weekend?	Four weekends	Writing notes about the past		
Too expensive or quite cheap?		Winners and losers			
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION The letter	r o p47	Reading and Writing Portfolio 5 A night to remember Workbook p72			
		The Google guys	Negative Past Simple sentences		
My internet Find someone who	Planet Google	The doog o gaye	Past Simple yes/no questions		
	Planet Google Help with Listening can and can't	Our first colour TV The first mobile phones	Past Simple <i>yes/no</i> questions My first mobile		
Find someone who	, and the second	Our first colour TV			
Find someone who My mobile, computer and TV	Help with Listening can and can't Here is the news VIDEO Talking about the news	Our first colour TV The first mobile phones			

Lesson		Vocabulary	Grammar	Real World	
7A Where I live	p56	places in a town	there is/there are		
7B A new home	p58	rooms and things in a house	How much? and How many?; some, any, a		
7C At the shops	p60	shops; things to buy	,,	what sales assistants say; what customers say	
		clothes; colours; plural nouns		,	
Extra Practice 7 and Progress P	ortfolio	7 p121 🚳 Self-study DVD-RC	OM 7		
8A The meeting	p64	work	Present Continuous: positive and negative, questions and short answers		
8B It's snowing!	p66	types of transport; travelling verbs and phrases	Present Simple or Present Continuous		
BC On the phone	p68			talking on the phone	
8D Life outdoors	p70	indoor and outdoor activities; adjectives and adverbs			
Extra Practice 8 and Progress F	ortfolio		OM 8		
9A Holiday South Africa	p72	holiday activities	infinitive of purpose		
9B A trip to Egypt	p74	natural places	comparatives		
9C A day out	p76	animals		deciding what to do	
9D Time for a change	p78	verb patterns (<i>like doing</i> , <i>would like to do</i> , etc.)			
Extra Practice 9 and Progress P	ortfolio	9 p123 🚳 Self-study DVD-R0	OM 9		
10A Stay fit and healthy	p80	verb phrases; frequency expressions	imperatives; should/shouldn't		
10B What's she like?	p82	appearance; character	questions with <i>like</i>		
10C I feel ill	p84	health problems; treatment		talking about health	
10D Winter blues	p86	seasons; weather; word building			
Extra Practice 10 and Progress P	ortfolio ⁻	10 p124 🚳 Self-study DVD-R0	OM 10		
11A Happy New Year!	p88	New Year's resolutions	be going to (1): positive, negative and Wh- questions		
11B No more exams!	p90	studying	be going to or might; be going to (2):yes/no questions and short answers		
11C Directions	p92			directions; asking for and giving directions	
11D An invitation	p94	collocations			
Extra Practice 11 and Progress P	ortfolio 1	1 p125 👸 Self-study DVD-R0	OM 11		
12A It's a world record	p96	big and small numbers	superlatives		
12B Have you ever ?	p98	past participles	Present Perfect: positive and negative; <i>Have you ever ?</i> questions and short answers		
12C See you soon!	p100	things and places at an airport	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	at the airport; saying goodbye	
End of Course Review	p103				

VIDEO See Teacher's DVD

	VIDEO See reacher's DVL			
Speaking	Listening and Video	Reading	Writing	
Places near my home My favourite place	Three places Help with Listening Weak forms (3): prepositions			
Spot the difference My shopping habits	Renting a flat At the supermarket	An advert for a flat	Questions with Is there ?/ Are there ?	
Buying things in a department store	VIDEO Can I help you?	A conversation in a department store	A conversation in a department store	
What I wear		Me and my clothes		
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ɔ:/ an	d /3:/ p63	Reading and Writing Portfolio 7	Renting a flat Workbook p76	
Spot the difference	The contract	Conversations in the office and at home		
My travel habits Usually and today	Snow day A day at home Help with Listening Linking (2)	A day at home	Questions in the Present Simple or Present Continuous	
A phone conversation	Help with Listening Phone messages Emily's phone calls VIDEO Can I call you back?	A list, a business card and an advert Conversations on the phone	A phone conversation	
What can you do?		A reference letter	Sentences with adjectives and adverbs	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /I/ and	/i:/ p71	Reading and Writing Portfolio 8	Finding a job Workbook p78	
My last holiday Four places	A holiday in Cape Town Help with Listening Weak forms: review		Sentences with the infinitive of purpose	
Natural places Two people I know	Choosing a holiday Back from holiday	Two holiday places	Sentences with comparatives	
What would you like to do? Planning a day out Deciding what to do	VIDEO ► Planning a day out	Places to go for a day out		
Questions with <i>like</i> and <i>would like</i>		The grass is always greener	Questions with like and would like	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Silent le	tters p79	Reading and Writing Portfolio 9 Places to go Workbook p80		
People I know What should I do?	At the doctor's	Get fit for free	Tips on how to stay fit and healthy	
Describing people in my family Three friends	The <i>Break</i> advert Leo's new girlfriend Help with Listening Sentence stress (3)		A description of a person	
I'm not very well	VIDEO Get well soon Help with Listening Being sympathetic			
What's the weather like?		If you're SAD, see the light!		
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION The lett	er <i>a</i> p87	Reading and Writing Portfolio 10	The advice page Workbook p82	
Plans for the future	New Year's resolutions			
Next weekend Find one person who	The final exam Future plans Help with Listening going to		My plans for next month Yes/No questions with be going to	
Asking for and giving directions	Which holiday home? VIDEO > Giving directions	Two holiday homes An email giving directions		
My last wedding or party	Going to the wedding Help with Listening Linking: review	An email about a wedding	An email to my friends	
		Reading and Writing Portfolio 11	A town by the sea Workbook p84	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /u/ and	My superlatives The World Quiz Help with Listening Sentence stress:			
	The World Quiz	Record breakers The World Quiz		
	The World Quiz Help with Listening Sentence stress:		My life experiences Have you ever ? questions	

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Vowel sounds: review p102

Reading and Writing Portfolio 12 At the airport Workbook p86

Welcome!

Vocabulary numbers 0–20; the alphabet; things in the classroom; days of the week Real World introducing yourself; classroom instructions; names; saying goodbye

Hello!

- a CD1 1 Look at conversation 1 and listen.
 - **b** Practise conversation 1 with your teacher. Use your name.
- 2 a CD1 2 Look at conversation 2 and listen.
 - **b** Practise conversation 2 with four students. Use your name.

Numbers 0-20

a Work in pairs. How do we say these numbers?

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20

- **b** CD1 3 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- **c** Work in the same pairs. Say five numbers. Write your partner's numbers. Are they correct?

Classroom instructions

a Work in new pairs. Which of these instructions do you understand? Check in Language Summary Welcome

REAL WORLD 0.2 > p127.

Open your book.

Look at the photo on page 11.

Do exercise 6 on your own.

Look at the board.

Work in pairs.

Work in groups.

Fill in the gaps.

Compare answers.

Listen and check.

Listen and practise.

Match the words to the pictures.

Ask and answer the questions.

b CD1 4 Listen and tick (✓) the instructions when you hear them.



The alphabet

5 a CD1 5 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the alphabet.

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii

Jj Kk Ll Mm Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr

Ss It Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

b CD1 6 Listen and write the words.

TIP • ss = double s



First names and surnames

- **a** Look at conversation 3. Then match the teacher's questions 1–3 to Marcos's answers a–c.
 - 1 What's your first name?
- a F-U-E-N-T-E-S.
- 2 What's your surname?
- **b** Fuentes.
- 3 How do you spell that?
- c It's Marcos.
- b CD1 7 Listen and check.
- **c** CD1 8 Listen to two conversations, A and B. Write the names.
- 7 a CD1 >9 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in 6a.
 - **b** Ask four students these questions and write the names.

Things in the classroom

8 a Match these words to pictures a-j.

a table *b* a chair a book a pencil a pen a dictionary a CD player a TV a DVD player a computer



b Work in pairs. Test your partner.

What's picture e?

It's a chair.

Goodbye!

9 a Put the days of the week in order.

Friday Tuesday Thursday Monday *1* Wednesday Saturday Sunday

- **b** CD1 10 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise. What day is it today? What day is it tomorrow?
- 10 CD1 11 Listen and write the day. Then practise with other students.

MARCOS Bye, Olga.

OLGA Goodbye. See you on _____

MARCOS Yes, see you.

Progress Portfolio Welcome!

Tick	(✓) the things you can do in English.
	I can say hello, introduce myself and say goodbye.
	I can say numbers 0-20.
	I can understand classroom instructions.
	I can say the alphabet.
	I can spell my name.
	I can say the days of the week.

How are you?

Vocabulary countries and nationalities

Grammar be (1): positive and Wh- questions;
subject pronouns and possessive adjectives

Real World introducing people

QUICK REVIEW The alphabet Write five words in English. Work in pairs. Spell the words to your partner. He/She writes them down. Are they correct?

Listening and Speaking

- 1 a CD1 12 PRONUNCIATION Read and listen to conversation 1. Listen again and practise.
 - **b** Practise conversation 1 with four students. Use your name.
- 2 a CD1 13 PRONUNCIATION Read and listen to conversation 2. Listen again and practise.
 - **b** Work in groups. Take turns to introduce students to each other.

Vocabulary and Speaking

Countries and nationalities

a Tick (✓) the countries you know.

countries I'm from	nationalities /'m
Brazil Australia Argentina the USA Germany Italy Mexico Russia Egypt	Brazili <u>a</u> <u>n</u> Australi Argentini Americ Germ Itali Mexic Russi Egypti
the UK Spain Poland Turkey China	Brit i s h Span Pol Turk Chin e s e
Japan France	Japan French

- b Write the missing letters in the nationalities. Check in Language Summary 1 VOCABULARY 1.1 p128.
- **c** Where are you from? What's your nationality?

I'm from Colombia.

I'm Korean.

a CD1 14 Listen and notice the word stress (*) in the countries and nationalities in **3a**.

Brazil Brazilian

b PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise. Copy the word stress.

Reading and Listening

- **a** CD1 15 Read and listen to conversations 3, 4 and 5. Write the countries.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare answers.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be (1): positive and Wh- questions

a Fill in the gaps with 'm, 're or 's.

POSITIVE (+)

- **1** | <u>'m</u> from Spain. (= I am)
- **2** You____ in room 6. (= you are)
- **3** He____ from Italy. (= he is)
- 4 She____ from Brazil. (= she is)
- 5 It____ Carlos Moreno. (= it is)
- 6 We____ from Australia. (= we are)
- 7 They____ from the UK. (= they are)
- **b** Fill in the gaps with are or 's.

WH- QUESTIONS (?)

- 1 Where <u>are</u> you from? 4 What____ your name?
- 2 Where _____ he from? 5 What _____ your names?
- 3 Where _____ she from? 6 Where _____ they from?
- c Check in GRAMMAR 1.1 > p129.

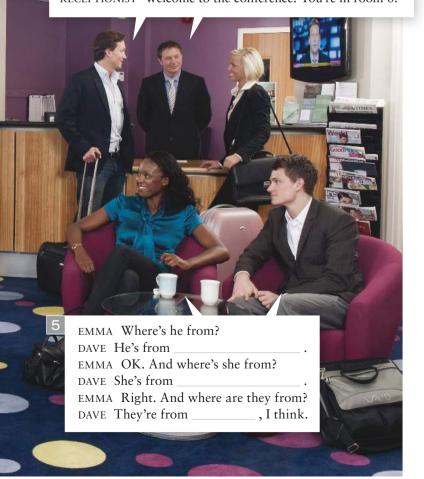
RECEPTIONIST What are your names, please?

DANIEL My name's Daniel Ross and this is Kelly Easton.

RECEPTIONIST Where are you from?

DANIEL We're from _______.

RECEPTIONIST Welcome to the conference. You're in room 6.



a CD1 16 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **6a** and the questions in **6b**. Copy the contractions (*I'm*, you're, What's, etc.).

I'm from Spain.

- **b** Work in pairs. Practise conversations 3, 4 and 5.
- Fill in the gaps with 'm, 're, are or 's.

DAVE They ²	from E	Egypt.
EMMA What ³ _	thei	r names?
DAVE His name	e ⁴ H	anif and her name ⁵
Fatima.		
RECEPTIONIST `	What ⁶	your names, please?
	_	your names, please: Dieter Koller and
DIETER Our na	imes ⁷	
	ames ⁷	Dieter Koller and

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Subject pronouns and possessive adjectives

Fill in the table with the words in **bold** in 8.

subject pronouns	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
possessive adjectives	my				its		

GRAMMAR 1.2 > p129

10 a Choose the correct words.

RECEPTIONIST What are ¹you/your names, please? MARTIN ²We/Our names are Martin and Julia Green. RECEPTIONIST Where are ³you/your from? MARTIN ⁴We/Our 're from the USA.

LISA Where are 5they/their from?

TOM ⁶He/His 's from France and ⁷she/her 's from Japan.

LISA What are 8they/their names?

TOM ⁹*He/His* name's Louis and ¹⁰*she/her* name's Hiroko.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in pairs. Student A p104. Student B p109.

Coffee break

Vocabulary jobs; a and an Grammar be (2): negative, yes/no questions and short answers

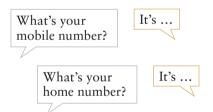
QUICK REVIEW Numbers 0-20 Work in pairs. Count from 0 to 20: A Zero. B One. A Two. B Three. Then count backwards from 20 to 0: A Twenty. B Nineteen. A Eighteen.

Listening and Speaking

a Work in pairs. Look at A–D. How do we say the phone numbers?

TIP • In phone numbers 0 = oh or zero and 11 = double one.

- **b** CD1 > 17 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- **2 a** CD1 18 Listen to four conversations. Write the phone numbers.
 - **b** Ask three students their phone numbers. You can invent numbers if you like!



Vocabulary and SpeakingJobs

a Work in pairs. Which of these jobs do you know? Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 1.2 > p128.

a manager a doctor an engineer a sales assistant a waiter/a waitress a cleaner a police officer an actor/an actress a musician a teacher a student a housewife an accountant a lawyer a builder a mechanic

TIPS • In these vocabulary boxes we only show the main stress.

- We can also say *I'm unemployed*. not *I'm an unemployed*. and *I'm retired*. not *I'm a retired*.
- **b** CD1 19 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise. Copy the word stress.



HELP WITH VOCABULARY a and an

- Look at the jobs in **3a**. Then complete the rules with a or an.
 - We use _____ with nouns that begin with a **consonant** sound. (The consonants are *b, c, d, f,* etc.)
 - We use _____ with nouns that begin with a vowel sound. (The vowels are a, e, i, o, u.)

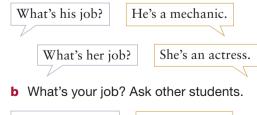
V0CABULARY 1.3 > p128

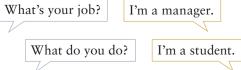
Fill in the gaps with a or an.

- 1
 ______job
 4
 ______book

 2
 ______student
 5
 ______English book

 3
 ______answer
 6
 ______room
- **a** Look again at the pictures in VOCABULARY 1.2 > p128. Take turns to cover the words and test your partner.





Listening and Speaking

- 7 a CD1 20 Read and listen to these conversations. Fill in the gaps with the correct jobs.
 - 1 A Are you from New York?
 - B No, we aren't from the USA. We're from Canada.
 - A Oh, really? What do you do?
 - B I'm an 1 and Jane's a 2 .
 - 2 A Who's she?
 - **B** Her name's Sally Andrews.
 - A Is she a 3
 - B Yes, she is. But she isn't famous.
 - **3** A What do you do?
 - **B** I'm a ⁴______ . And you?
 - **A** I'm an ⁵_____
 - B Are you from Mexico?
 - A No, I'm not. I'm from Colombia.
 - **b** Look at the photo. Match conversations 1–3 to the groups of people A–C.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be (2): negative, yes/no questions and short answers

- **a** Look again at **7a**. <u>Underline</u> all the parts of *be* in the conversations.
 - **b** Fill in the gaps in these negative sentences with 'm, aren't and isn't.
 - 1 l____ not a teacher.
 - 2 You/We/They _____ from the USA. (= are not)
 - 3 He/She/It _____ famous. (= is not)
 - **c** Fill in the gaps in these questions and answers with 'm, Is, Are, isn't or aren't.
 - 1 Are you from Spain?

Yes, I am./No, I____ not.

- 2 _____ she a musician? Yes, she is./No, she ____
- you from New York?
 Yes, we are./No, we ____
- d Check in GRAMMAR 1.3 > p129.
- 9 CD1 21 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Copy the contractions (*I'm*, aren't, etc.).

I'm not a teacher.

We aren't from the USA.



Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the people in the photo.

Is he a doctor?

No, he isn't. He's an engineer.

- a Tick (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Make the other sentences negative. Write the correct sentences.
 - 1 I'm an English student. <
 - 2 I'm from the UK.

I'm not from the UK. I'm from Poland.

- 3 My English class is in room 12.
- 4 I'm an accountant.
- 5 My teacher's from Australia.
- 6 My language school is in London.
- 7 My English lessons are on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
- 8 The students in my class are all from my country.
- **b** Work in groups. Compare sentences.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in pairs. Student A p104. Student B p109.

☐ REAL 10 WORLD

Personal details

Real World asking for personal details; asking people to repeat things Vocabulary numbers 20–100

QUICK REVIEW Jobs Work in pairs. Write all the jobs you know. Which pair in the class has the most words?

What number is it?

a Work in pairs. How do we say these numbers? Check in VOCABULARY 1.4 p128.

20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100

b Work in the same pairs. Say these numbers.

28 34 47 51 63 75 86 92

2 a CD1 22 Listen to these numbers. Notice the stress.

thirteen thirty fifteen fifty nineteen ninety

b CD1 23 Listen and write the numbers.

c CD1 24 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the numbers in 2a and 2b.

Work in pairs. Say a number between 1 and 100. Your partner says the next three numbers.

fifty-eight

fifty-nine, sixty, sixty-one

What's her address?

4 a Look at the photo of Emma. Then match these words to Emma's things 1–3.

a credit card a business card a mobile phone

HOME BANK

YALIR 02/12

2300

MRS EMMA R MITCHELL IN

EXPIRES 01/20

- **b** Match these words/phrases to the letters a–j in the pictures.
- 1 first name b
- 2 surname
- 3 home number
- 4 work number
- 5 mobile number
- 6 home address
- 7 email address
- 8 postcode at work
- 9 credit card number
- **10** job
- **c** Work in pairs. Ask questions about 1–10 in **4b**.

What's her first name?

Emma.



Hi Daniela!
The party's at my
house. My address is

i 68 Evesham Road
Liverpool L13 7KW.
My home number is

i 0151 496 0633.
See you on Sunday!
Love Emma



Hiring a car

HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress (1)

- 5 CD1 25 Look at the photo of Paul. Then listen to the woman's questions. Notice the sentence stress. We stress the important words.
 - 1 What's your surname, please?
 - 2 What's your first name?
 - 3 And what's your nationality?
 - 4 What's your address?
 - 5 And what's your postcode?
 - 6 What's your mobile number?
 - 7 And what's your home number?
 - 8 What's your email address?
- a VIDEO 1 CD1 26 Watch or listen to Paul's conversation. Tick (✓) the sentences in 5 when you hear them.
 - **b** Watch or listen again. Complete the form.

Car Hire Fo	E E E E Car Pontale
surname	
first name	Paul
nationality	
address	Road
	Bristol
mobile number	07969
home number	
email address	paul99@webmail.com

REAL WORLD Asking people to repeat things

a CD1 27 Listen to these sentences from the conversation in the car hire office. Fill in the gaps with these words.

	repeat	again	please	Could	sorry	
1	I'm	?)			
2		you say that, plea				
3	Could	you	tha	t,	?	
b	PRONUI	NCIATION	Listen a	gain and	practise	
F	REAL WORLD 1.3 > p129					

- 8 CD1 28 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in **5**. Copy the sentence stress.
- 9 Work in pairs. Interview your partner and fill in the form. Use the questions in **5**.

•	Car Hire Form Customer ref: 00350	Car Rentals
	surname	
	first name	
	nationality	
	address	
	mobile number	
	home number	
0	email address	

VOCABULARY 1D AND SKILLS

Lost property

Vocabulary personal possessions; plurals; *this, that, these, those*

QUICK REVIEW Numbers 0–100 Work in pairs. Count from 0 to 51 in threes: A Zero. B Three. A Six. Then count from 0 to 98 in sevens: B Zero. A Seven. B Fourteen.

Look at the picture of the lost property room in the conference hotel. Match these words to 1–17.

diaries 12 wallets
an MP3 player a mobile
watches an umbrella bags
shoes a camera coats
a bike/bicycle a radio
suitcases a laptop
dresses ID cards false teeth

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Plurals

a Write the missing letters. When do we add -s, -es and -ies? Which plurals are irregular?

singular	plural
a bag a wallet a suitcase	bag _ wallet _ suitcase _
a watch a dress	watch dress
a diary	diar
a man a woman a child a person	m_n wom_n childr_n pple
a tooth	t th

- b Check in VOCABULARY 1.6 > p128.
- 3 CD1 29 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the singular and plural words in 2a.
- 4 Write the plurals.

a a bike bikes
b a credit card
c a nationality
d a waitress
e a person
f a camera
g an address
h a man
i a country
j a woman



5 Work in pairs. Take turns to test each other on 1–17.

Number 12. They're diaries.

Number 17.

It's an MP3 player.

Eva's got a job at the hotel. Look at the pictures and fill in the gaps with words from 1.









HELP WITH VOCABULARY

this, that, these, those

7 Fill in the table with this, that, these and those.

	here 🕨	there -
singular		
plural		

8 a CD1 30 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Copy the stress.

this → What's this? → What's this in English?

b Choose three things in the classroom or from your bag. Ask your teacher what they are in English.

What's that in English?	It's a	poster.
What are these in En	glish?	They're keys.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

Word stress and syllables

1 CD1 31 Listen to these words. Notice the stress and number of syllables. Listen again and practise.

Brit-ish Ja-pan

bi-cy-cle com-pu-ter sev-en-teen

2 a Work in pairs. Write the words in the table.

teacher musician address thirty thirteen umbrella engineer manager Brazil Germany Japanese mobile Mexican mechanic unemployed

Brit-ish	teacher
Ja-pan	
bi-cy-cle	
com-pů-ter	
sev-en-teen	

- **b** CD1 32 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- a Write five words. Mark the stress on each word.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare words. Is the stress on your partner's words correct?

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - Extra Practice 1 and Progress Portfolio 1 p115
 - Language Summary 1 p128
 - 1A-D Workbook p5
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 1 with Review Video



Reading and Writing

Portfolio 1 At the hotel Workbook p64
 Reading addresses; hotel registration forms
 Writing capital letters (1); addresses; filling in a hotel registration form

What's important?

Vocabulary adjectives (1); adjective word order and *very* Grammar *have got*: positive and negative, questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Personal possessions

What's in the lost property room at the conference hotel? Write all the things you can remember. Work in pairs. Compare lists. Then check on p14.

Vocabulary Adjectives (1)

a Tick the adjectives you know. Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 2.1 > p130.

new good cheap beautiful	old bad expensive ugly	big early fast young	small late slow old
easy	difficult	right	wrong
nice gr	eat importa	ant favo	ourite

b Work in pairs. Take turns to test your partner on the opposites.



HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Adjective word order and very

Look at these sentences. Then choose the correct words in the rules.

She's late.

It's a small bag.

It's a very difficult question.

Those are my new shoes.

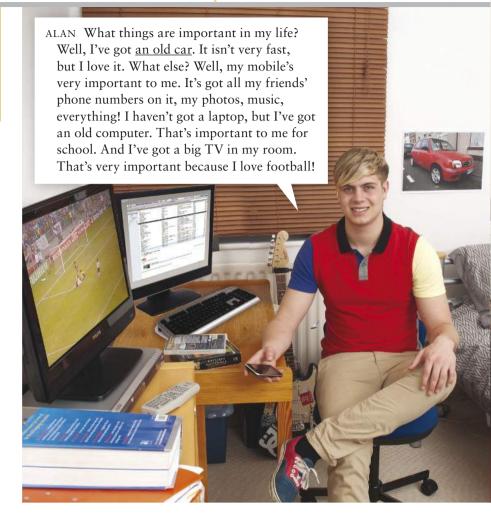
- We put adjectives before/after the verb be.
- We put adjectives before/after a noun.
- We put very before/after adjectives.
- Adjectives are/aren't plural with plural nouns.

VOCABULARY 2.2 > p130

- a Make sentences with these words.
 - 1 very / 's / It / early .

It's very early.

- 2 answer / right / That / 's / the .
- 3 very / are / Those / dresses / expensive.
- 4 cheap/a/lt/watch/'s.
- 5 very / They / good / 're / cameras .
- 6 question / very / a / difficult / 's / That .
- **b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences.



Reading and Listening

- **a** CD1 33 Read and listen to Alan and his grandmother, Mary. Underline the things that are important to each person.
 - **b** Read the texts again. Find all the adjectives.
 - c Work in pairs. Compare answers.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR have got: positive and negative

- **a** Look again at the texts about Alan and Mary. Find all the examples of 've got (= have got), 's got (= has got), haven't got and hasn't got.
 - **b** Fill in the gaps with 've, 's, haven't and hasn't.

POSITIVE (+)

I/you/we/they_____ got (= have got)
he/she/it_____ got (= has got)

NEGATIVE (-)

I/you/we/they _____ got (= have not got)
he/she/it ____ got (= has not got)

GRAMMAR 2.1 > p131

MARY What's important to me? I've got this very expensive watch. It's from Ben, my husband, and I love it. And my diary – that's important to me too. Ben hasn't got a diary, he's got everything on his mobile these days. And my new bicycle is important to me because we haven't got a car. What else? Well, we've got a beautiful cat, Lily. She's very important!



- 6 CD1 34 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.
 Copy the stress and contractions (*I've*, *he's*, etc.). *I've* got an old car.
- Fill in the gaps with the correct form of have got.
 - 1 | 've got (+) a new camera.
 - 2 She_____(-) a very big house.
 - 3 You_____(+) a nice car.
 - 4 We _____ (-) a computer.
 - 5 | _____ (–) your mobile number.
 - 6 He_____(+) a very good TV, but he____(-) a DVD player.
 - 7 Mary and Ben _____ (+) a beautiful cat called Lily.
 - 8 They _____(-) a dog.
- **a** Think of a friend and write five things he/she has got or hasn't got.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare lists. Are any of the things the same?



Listening and Speaking

a Work in pairs. Look at the table and guess which things Alan and Mary have got. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in the guess columns.

	Alan		Mary	
product	guess	answer	guess	answer
laptop	X	X		
camera				
MP3 player				
radio				
DVD player				

b CD1 35 Listen to Alan and Mary answer questions for a survey. Complete the *answer* columns. Are your quesses correct?

CHORT ANDWERS

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

OUTCTIONS

have got: questions and short answers

10 a Fill in the gaps with have, has, haven't or hasn't.

QUESTIONS	SHURT ANSWERS		
Have you got a camera?	Yes, I		
Trave you got a carriera:	No, I		
he/she got a DVD player?	Yes, he/she		
Tie/site got a DVD player:	No, he/she		
they got any cheap TVs?	Yes, they		
they got any cheap 1 vs:	No, they		
What you got in your bag?			
TIP • We use any with plural nouns in yes/no questions.			
b Check in GRAMMAR 2.2 p131.			

- 11 CD1 36 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions and short answers in 10a.
- Work in pairs. Ask questions about Alan and Mary.

Has Alan got a new car? No, he hasn't.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in pairs. Student A p104. Student B p109.

QUICK REVIEW have got Work in pairs. Ask questions with have got. Find five things you've got but your partner hasn't got.



husband son daughter father mother brother children

PAM We're a typical British family, I think. My

1 husband 's name is Nick and we've got two
2 , a boy and a girl. Our 3 son 's name is

Robbie and Florence is our 4 - she's just
a baby. And my parents? Well, Ben is my 5 and Mary is my 6 . I've got one

7 , his name's Greg, and one sister, Jill.

wife parents sisters granddaughter grandsons grandchildren

GREG My ⁸ <u>wife</u> 's name is Martina and we've got one son, Alan. He's nineteen years old now. I've got two ⁹ ______, Pam and Jill. Pam's married with two kids and Jill's divorced. My ¹⁰ <u>parents</u> 'names are Ben and Mary. They've got three children and three ¹¹ _____, two ¹² _____, Alan and Robbie, and a ¹³ ______, Florence.









aunts grandparents cousins grandmother grandfather uncle

ALAN My mum and dad's names are Greg and
Martina. I've got two ¹⁴ <u>aunts</u>, Pam and Jill, and
one ¹⁵ ______. His name's Nick and he's a
doctor. I've also got two ¹⁶ ______, Robbie and
Florence. My ¹⁷ <u>grandparents</u> 'names are Ben – he's
my ¹⁸ ______ – and Mary, my ¹⁹ ______.



Vocabulary, Reading and Listening Family

- **a** Look at the family tree. Then read about the family. Fill in the gaps with the words in the boxes.
 - **b** CD1 37 Listen and check your answers.
- Look again at the family tree. Put the words in the boxes in three groups. Then check in VOCABULARY 2.3 p130.
 - 1 or male father/dad
 - 2 Q female mother/mum
 - 3 on male and female parents

a Write four questions with *How many ...*? about the people in the family tree.

How many brothers and sisters has Pam got? How many children have Mary and Ben got?

- **b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer your questions.
- 4 Tick the correct sentences. Change the words in bold in the incorrect sentences.
 - 1 Jill is Pam's cousin. sister
 - 2 Ben is Mary's husband.
 - 3 Jill is Alan's cousin.
 - 4 Alan is Martina's son.
 - 5 Nick and Pam are Robbie's **grandparents**.
 - 6 Mary is Robbie and Florence's grandmother.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Possessive 's

a Look at these sentences. Then read the rule.

Jill is Pam's sister. My husband's name is Nick.

- We use a name + 's (Pam's, etc.) or a noun + 's (husband's, etc.) for the possessive.
- **b** 's can mean is, has or the possessive. Match 1–3 to a–c.
- 1 Ben is Pam's father.
- \mathbf{a} 's = is
- 2 Jill's her sister.
- **b** 's = has
- 3 She's got one brother.
- c 's = possessive

GRAMMAR 2.3 > p131

- Make sentences about these people.
 - 1 Pam / Alan
- 3 Robbie / Florence
- Pam is Alan's aunt.
- 4 Mary / Ben
- 2 Grea / Martina
- 5 Florence / Ben and Mary
- 7 CD1 38 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Copy the stress.

Alan's \rightarrow Pam is Alan's aunt.

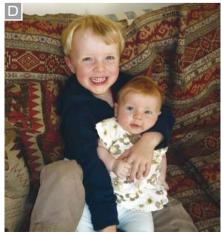
Listening and Speaking

Jill wants to show her new boyfriend, Luke, some photos. Look at photos A–D. Who are the people?









- 9 a CD1 39 Listen to Jill and Luke's conversation. Put photos A-D in order.
 - **b** Listen again and choose the correct words.
 - 1 Jill's sister Pam is an *English*/French teacher.
 - 2 Pam's husband Nick is a *lawyer/doctor*.
 - 3 Their son Robbie is six/seven.
 - 4 Jill's brother Greg is an engineer/accountant.
 - 5 His wife Martina is Spanish/Italian.
 - 6 Jill's mother is retired/a sales assistant.
 - 7 Jill's father is seventy/seventy-three.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Sentence stress (2)

a CD1 39 Listen to the first
sentence of the conversation again.
Notice the sentence stress. We stress
the important words.

Luke, come and look at these photos of my family.

b Look at Audio Script CD1 39 p156. Listen to the whole conversation and follow the stressed words.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- a Write your name and the names of five people in your family on a piece of paper. Think what you can say about these people (age, job, married, etc.).

 Don't write this information.
 - **b** Choose a partner, but don't talk to him/her. Swap papers. Make questions to ask about your partner's family.

Who's (Claudia)?

Is she married?

Has she got any children?

- **a** Work with your partner. Take turns to ask questions about his/her family. Make notes on your partner's answers.
 - **b** Tell another student about your partner's family.

REAL 2C WORLD

Time and money

Real World telling the time; talking about the time; saying prices; buying tickets at the cinema

Vocabulary time words

QUICK REVIEW Family words Work in pairs. Write all the family words you know. Which words are for men/boys, women/girls, or both?

What's the time?

a Put these time words in order.

a minute a year a day a week an hour a second 1 a month

- **b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.
- 1 How many minutes are in an hour?
- 2 How many hours are in a day?
- 3 How many months are in a year?
- 4 How many weeks are in a year?
- 5 How many hours are in a week?
- 6 How many days are in a year?
- 2 a Match the times to pictures A–F.

one o'clock *A* quarter to ten twenty past five half past seven quarter past four twenty to nine













b We can say times in a different way. Match these times to pictures A–F.

four fifteen five twenty seven thirty eight forty nine forty-five one

a Complete the times.







five past _

2 twenty-five to

ten





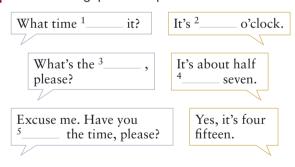


4 ___ _ eleven

5 ____-five

6 _____

- b Check in REAL WORLD 2.1 > p131.
- 4 CD1 40 Listen and match conversations 1–3 to three of the pictures A–F in 2a.
 - REAL WORLD Talking about the time
 - a Fill in the gaps in the questions and answers.



- **b** Fill in the gaps with to, from or at.
- 1 My English class is _____ ten.
- 2 My son's class is _____ seven ____ nine thirty.
- REAL WORLD 2.2 p132
- 6 a CD1 41 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions and answers in 5a. Copy the polite intonation in the questions.
 - **b** Write six times. Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **5a**. Write your partner's times. Are they correct?



FilmWorld

Now showing

A New Day (12) , 7.00, 9.20

The Brothers (15) 5.00, 4_ ____ , 9,30

Tickets: Adults C£10.50/£11.50 Children d £7,25/£8,25

For more information phone 08081 570203 www.filmworld.co.uk

An evening out

- a Look at adverts A and B. Which is for a cinema and which is for an exhibition?
 - **b** CD1 42 Listen and write the missing times 1-4 on the adverts.
- **8** a Work in pairs. How do we say these prices?

£20 £7.50 40p £29.99 €6.50 50c €9 \$35

- b CD1 43 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- c CD1 44 Listen and choose the correct ticket prices a-d on adverts A and B.
- a Before you watch or listen, check these words with your teacher.

buy popcorn a screen start

b VIDEO 2 CD1 45 Look at the photo in a cinema. Watch or listen to the people's conversations with the ticket seller. Which film do Chris and Louise want to see? Which film do Alison and Josh want to see?



Louise

	price of tickets	time film starts	screen number
Chris and Louise			
Alison and Josh			

Alison

REAL WORLD Buying tickets at the cinema

a Read the sentences. Fill in the gaps with these words.

Can adults time are Thanks please is welcome

CUSTOMER

TICKET SELLER

Yes, of course.

(£11.50) for ⁵

You're 8

the film.

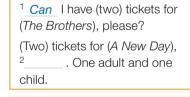
That's (£23), please.

(£8.45) for children. So

that's (£19.95), please.

. Enjoy

Chris



How much ³ that? How much ⁴ the tickets?

Here you are. What 6 the film?

Right. 7_

It starts at (seven fifteen). It starts in (two minutes). a lot. Thank you very much.

b Check in REAL WORLD 2.4 > p132.

- CD1 46 Listen and practise the customer's sentences in 11a.
- Work in pairs. Student A p105. Student B p110.

VOCABULARY 2D AND SKILLS

Where's the baby?

Vocabulary things in a house; prepositions of place Skills listening: a conversation

QUICK REVIEW Times and prices Write four times and four prices. Work in pairs. Say them to your partner. He/She writes them down. Are they correct?

Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 2.5 > p130.

a mirror a desk a sofa a carpet a door a bookcase a window the floor a plant a coffee table a lamp curtains

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Prepositions of place

Where's the cat? Match the prepositions to pictures 1–6. Then check in VOCABULARY 2.6 p131.

in on by under behind in front of

2

3

a Look at the picture. Choose six of these things. Write sentences to say where they are.

Nick's suitcase is behind the sofa.

Nick's suitcase
Nick's keys
Nick's mobile phone
Pam's coat
Robbie's new shoes
the cat
Robbie's bag
Robbie's books
Nick's passport
Robbie's MP3 player
the lamp
the DVDs

b Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Are your partner's sentences correct?



Work in pairs. Cover the box in **3a**. Point at things in the picture and ask questions with *Whose ...?*

Whose mobile phone is this?

It's Nick's.

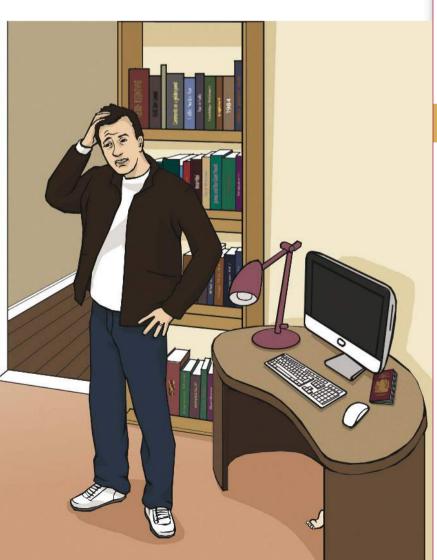
Whose shoes are these?

They're Robbie's.

- **a** CD1 47 Listen and tick the things in the box in **3a** that the family talk about.
 - **b** Listen again. Three things are in the wrong place in the picture. What are they?
 - c Where's the baby?!
- 6 Look at Audio Script CD1 47 p156. Listen again and underline all the prepositions of place.
- Look at the picture for one minute. Then cover the picture. Work in pairs. Take turns to ask where things are in the living room.

Where's Robbie's bag?

It's by the door.



HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

The schwa /ə/ in words

a CD1 48 The schwa /ə/is very common in English. Listen to these words. Notice the schwas. Is the schwa stressed?

address mechanic Poland teacher
/ə/ /ə/ /ə/ /ə/ /ə/
doctor number manager accountant
/ə/ /ə/ /ə//ə//ə/ /ə/

- **b** Listen again and practise.
- a Work in pairs. Underline the schwa in each word.

China seven actor important second daughter parents Japan police sofa

- **b** CD1 49 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- **a** Look at these words. Circle the word with a schwa.
 - 1 email /(letter)
- 5 laptop / computer
- 2 dentist / cleaner
- 6 Italy / Egypt
- 3 seventy / ninety
- 7 window / mirror
- 4 Spanish / German
- 8 Saturday / Tuesday
- **b** Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- c CD1 50 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - Extra Practice 2 and Progress Portfolio 2 p116
 - Language Summary 2 p130
 - 2A-D Workbook 2 p10
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 2 with Review Video



- Reading and Writing
 - Portfolio 2 My favourite thing Workbook p66
 Reading people's favourite things
 Writing capital letters (2); punctuation;
 a description of your favourite thing

3A My day

Vocabulary daily routines

Grammar Present Simple (1): positive and

Wh- questions (//you/we/they)

QUICK REVIEW Prepositions of place
Work in pairs. Say where something is in the classroom: A It's on the floor behind the teacher's desk. Your partner guesses what it is: B Is it a bag? A Yes, it is./No, it isn't.

Vocabulary Daily routines

a Tick the words/phrases you know. Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 3.1 > p132.

get up go to bed leave home get home have breakfast have lunch have dinner start work/classes finish work/classes work study sleep live

TIP • In these vocabulary boxes we only show the main stress in phrases.

- **b** Match two of the words/phrases from **1a** to these times of day.
- 1 in the morning get up 3 in the evening
 -
- 2 in the afternoon
- 4 at night
- **c** Work in pairs. Compare answers. Are they the same?

Reading and Speaking

- a Look at the photos of Kari Matchett. What's her job?
 - **b** Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

glamorous a TV show a studio hair make-up learn your lines

- **c** Work in pairs. Guess the times that TV actors do these things.
- 1 get up

- 3 start work
- 2 have breakfast
- 4 have lunch
- **d** Read the article and check your answers.
- Read the article again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

Canada

- 1 Kari Matchett is from Los Angeles. F
- 2 TV actors get up very late.
- 3 They have breakfast at the studio.
- 4 They work for six hours before lunch.
- 5 They have half an hour for lunch.



This week I talk to Kari Matchett, star of the TV shows 24 and ER, about a typical day at the studio and her glamorous life as an actress.



- **DAVID** Where are you from, Kari?
- KARI I'm from Canada, but I live and work in Los Angeles.
- D Can you tell us about your day-to-day life?
- Well, TV actors work very long days and we start work very early.
- D What time do you get up?
- **K** I get up at 4.30 in the morning.
- **D** Wow! You get up very early.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Simple (1): positive (I/you/we/they)

- We use the Present Simple to talk about daily routines.
- **a** Find the verbs in these sentences. They are in the Present Simple.
 - 1 I get up at 4.30 in the morning.
 - 2 You get up very early.
 - 3 We start work at about 7.00.
 - 4 They have an hour for lunch.
 - **b** Is the Present Simple the same or different after *I*, you, we and they?

GRAMMAR 3.1 > p134

5 CD1 51 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 4a. Copy the stress.

I get up at four thirty in the morning.

- **a** Look at Kari's answers in the article again. Underline all the verbs in the Present Simple.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare answers.



- K Yes, and I'm not very good in the morning, so it's always difficult! I leave home at 5.30 and I get to the studio at about 6.00. That's when people do my hair and make-up.
- **D** What about breakfast?
- **K** I have breakfast at about 6.15 in the make-up room. Then we start work at about 7.00.
- D When do you have lunch?
- K We have lunch at 1.00 and we start work again at 2.00.
- Read about Kari's afternoon and evening routine. Fill in the gaps with these verbs.

finish	get	go	start	finish	sleep
	_	_			

- D When do you finish work?
- K Most days we ¹ *finish* at about 9.00.
- You ² work at 7.00 and you ³ work at 9.00!
- K Yes, it's a very long day, but sometimes I ⁴______ for an hour in the afternoon.
- D What time do you get home?
- **K** I ⁵ home at about 9.30.
- D Where do you have dinner?
- K Usually at home while I learn my lines for the next day. Then I ⁶—— to bed at 11.00.
- D So do you have a glamorous life?
- K Not when I'm at work, no definitely not!
- **a** Write six sentences about your daily routine. Use words/phrases from **1a**.

I start work at half past eight.

b Work in pairs. Compare sentences.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Simple (1): *Wh*- questions (*I/you/we/they*)

a Look at the table. Notice the word order in questions.

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What time	do	you	get up?	
When	do	you	have	lunch?

TIP • Present Simple questions are the same for *I*, *you*, *we* and *they*.

- **b** Write questions 1–3 in the table.
- 1 When do you finish work?
- 2 What time do you get home?
- 3 Where do you have dinner?
- c Check in GRAMMAR 3.2 > p134.
- 10 a Make questions with these words.
 - 1 Where / live / you / do? Where do you live?
 - 2 you / do / Where / work?
 - 3 What time / get up / you / do?
 - 4 start / When / do / you / work or classes?
 - 5 do / What time / get / you / home?
 - 6 dinner / do / When / you / have ?
 - **b** CD1 52 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and check. Notice how we say *do you* /djə/. Then listen again and practise.

Where do you /djə/ live?

c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **10a**.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Write eight questions about people's routines in the week or at the weekend. Use words/phrases from 1a.

What time do you go to bed in the week? When do you get up at the weekend?

- **a** Ask other students your questions. For each question, find one student who does this at the same time as you.
 - **b** Tell the class two things that you and other students do at the same time.

3B

Free time

Vocabulary free time activities (1); time phrases with *on*, *in*, *at*, *every*Grammar Present Simple (2): negative and *yes/no* questions (*I/you/we/they*)

QUICK REVIEW Daily routines Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your Sunday routines: A What time do you get up on Sundays? B At about eleven. And you? Are the times the same or different?

Vocabulary Free time activities (1)

a Work in pairs. Which of these phrases do you know? Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 3.2 p133.

stay in go out (a lot) eat out go for a drink go to the cinema go to concerts go shopping phone friends/my family visit friends/my family have coffee with friends do (a lot of) sport watch (a lot of) TV/DVDs

b Work in new pairs. What are your five favourite things to do on Saturdays?

Listening

- Look at the photo of Freddie and Jeanette. Where are they? Are they good friends, do you think?
- **a** CD1 53 Listen to Freddie and Jeanette's conversation. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?
 - 1 Freddie and Jeanette are good friends. F
 - 2 They work in the same office.
 - 3 They watch a lot of DVDs.
 - 4 Freddie's got tickets for a concert on Saturday.
 - 5 Freddie and Jeanette are single.
 - **b** Listen again. Tick the things in **1a** that Jeanette does in her free time.
 - 1 go out after work
 - 2 watch TV in the evenings
 - 3 go to the cinema
 - 4 watch a lot of DVDs ✓
 - 5 go shopping on Saturday morning
 - 6 go out on Saturday evening
 - 7 visit her parents on Sunday afternoon
 - 8 go to concerts



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Simple (2): negative (I/you/we/they)

4 a Look at the table. Notice the word order.

subject	auxiliary	infinitive	
I	don't (= do not)	go out	on Saturday evening.
You	don't	work	in this office.

- **b** Write sentences 1 and 2 in the table.
- 1 We don't stay in at the weekend.
- 2 They don't watch TV in the day.
- c Check in GRAMMAR 3.3 > p134.
- **a** Tick the sentences that are true for you. Make the other sentences negative.
 - 1 I study English. 🗸
 - 2 I phone my family every day
 I don't phone my family every day.
 - 3 I go shopping on Saturdays.
 - 4 I watch TV every evening.
 - 5 I eat out with my friends a lot.
 - 6 I live near this school.
 - 7 I have lunch at 12.00 every day.
 - 8 I work at the weekends.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Simple (2): *yes/no* questions and short answers (*I/you/we/they*)

a Look at the table. Notice the word order in the questions.

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)			SHORT	
auxiliary	subject	infinitive		ANSWERS
Do	you	eat out	a lot?	Yes, I do. No, I don't.
				Yes, we No, we
				Yes, they No, they

- **b** Write questions 1 and 2 in the table.
- 1 Do you go to concerts? 2 Do they watch TV a lot?
- c Fill in the gaps in the short answers column with do or don't.
- d Check in GRAMMAR 3.4 > p134.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Weak forms (1): do you ... ?

a CD1 54 Listen to how we usually say do you.

YOU EXPECT TO HEAR YOU USUALLY HEAR

Do you /du: ju:/ Do you /djə/

Do you /du: ju:/ go out after work? Do you /djə/ go out after work?

b CD1 55 Listen to these questions. Fill in the gaps.

You will hear each sentence twice.

- 1 What ____ in the evenings?
- 2 to the cinema?
- 3 What at the weekends?
- 4 to concerts?
- 8 a Fill in the gaps with do, don't or a verb from the box.

go out visit go out watch go (x2)

- 1 A Do you go out a lot in the week?
 - **B** Yes, we _____.
- 2 A ______ you _____ your parents at the weekend?
 - B Yes, I _____.
- 3 A ______ you _____ to concerts at the weekend?
 - **B** No, we _____.
- 4 A ______you _____ shopping on Saturdays?
 - B Yes, I _____.
- 5 A ______ your parents _____ on Saturday evenings?
 - B No, they _____ . They stay in and _____ TV.
- b CD1 56 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise. Copy the stress and weak forms.

Do you /djə/ go out a lot in the week?

c Work in pairs. Take turns to ask the questions in **8a**. Answer for you.

Vocabulary and Speaking

Time phrases with on, in, at, every

Write these words and phrases in the correct place. Some words and phrases can go in more than one place. Then check in VOCABULARY 3.3 p133.

Saturday the morning nine o'clock week the afternoon day the evening month half past three night the week Mondays Monday mornings the weekend morning Sunday afternoon



Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in two groups. Group A p105. Group B p110.

☐ REAL 3C WORLD



Real World phrases for special days; talking about days and dates; suggestions Vocabulary months; dates

QUICK REVIEW Free time activities Write four ways to end this sentence: On a perfect day I Work in pairs. Compare your days.







Congratulations!

- Match cards A–E to special days 1–5.
 - 1 a birthday
 - 2 a wedding
 - 3 the birth of a new baby
 - 4 a New Year's Eve party
 - 5 a wedding anniversary
- 2 a Match these phrases to the special days in 1.

Happy birthday! Happy New Year! Congratulations!

Happy anniversary!

b CD1 > 57 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c CD1 58 Listen and answer with the correct phrase.

When's your birthday?

a Put the months in the correct order.

July March December January 1 April October August June February November May September

b CD1 >59 PRONUNCIATION
Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

a Match the dates with the words. Then check in VOCABULARY 3.5 p133.

13th second twentieth 2^{nd} twelfth 20th thirty-first 3rd fourth 21st thirtieth 4th 22ndfifth twenty-second 5th 30th first twenty-first 12th third 31st thirteenth

b CD1 60 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the dates in 4a.

REAL WORLD Talking about days and dates

- a Match questions 1-4 to answers a-d. Notice the words in bold.
- 1 What day is it today?
 - **2** What's the date today?
 - 3 What's the date tomorrow?
 - 4 When's your birthday?
- a (It's) the fifth of March.
- b (It's) March the sixth.
- c (It's on) June the third.
- d It's Wednesday.
- **b** CD1 61 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

REAL WORLD 3.2 > p134

- 6 CD1 62 Listen to six conversations. Which dates do you hear?
 - 1 September (5th) / 15th
- 4 July 2nd / 22nd
- 2 December 13th / 30th
- 5 October 13th / 30th
- 3 March 4th / 14th
- 6 February 1st / 5th
- a Write four dates that are important to you every year.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Say your dates to your partner. Write your partner's dates. Then ask why they are important.

Why is May 6th important to you?

Because it's my wedding anniversary.

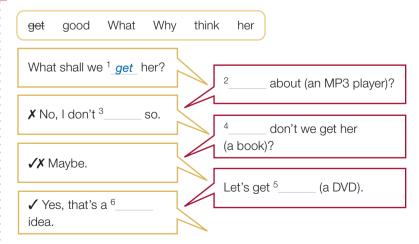


What shall we get her?

- a VIDEO 3 CD1 63 Watch or listen to Louise and her husband, Chris. What do they decide to buy their friend Sophie for her birthday?
 - **b** Watch or listen again and choose the correct answer.
 - 1 The date today is the 19^{th} (29^{th})
 - 2 It's Sophie's birthday on Tuesday/Thursday.
 - 3 Louise has got/hasn't got Sophie a birthday card.
 - 4 Sophie has got/hasn't got an MP3 player.
 - 5 Sophie has got/hasn't got lots of books.
 - 6 Sophie and Marcus watch/don't watch a lot of DVDs.

REAL WORLD Suggestions

9 Read these sentences. Fill in the gaps with these words.



TIP • We can say get or buy: What shall we get/buy her?

REAL WORLD 3.3 p134

- 10 CD1 64 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 9.
 - What shall we get her?
- Sophie and Marcus want to buy their son Liam a birthday present. Fill in the gaps with the correct words.

SOPHIE It's Liam's	¹ birthday next
week. What ²	we get him?
MARCUS ³	don't ⁴
get him a laptop?	
s No, I ⁵	_ think ⁶
Let's ⁷	him a new mobile.
м Maybe. But his	mobile's only a
year old.	
s I know! What 8_	a new bike?
M Yes. 9	a good ¹⁰

- a Work in pairs. It's Louise's birthday next week. Sophie and Marcus want to buy her a present. Write their conversation. Use language from 9.
 - **b** Practise the conversation until you remember it.
 - **c** Work in groups of four. Role-play your conversations for the other pair. What present do the other pair choose?

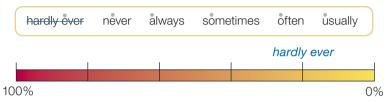
VOCABULARY 3D AND SKILLS

Early bird?

Vocabulary frequency adverbs
Grammar subject and object pronouns
Skills reading: a questionnaire;
listening: a conversation

QUICK REVIEW Dates Work in pairs. Take turns to say the dates 1st-31st: A *First.* B *Second.* A *Third* Then say them backwards! A *Thirty-first.* B *Thirtieth.* A *Twenty-ninth*

Put these frequency adverbs on the line. Then check in VOCABULARY 3.6 > p133.



- 2 a Read the questionnaire. Tick your answers.
 - **b** Look at p114. What's your score? Are you an early bird or a night owl?
 - **c** Work in groups. Compare scores. How many of your answers are the same?
- **a** CD1 65 Listen to Jeanette and her husband, Dominic. Write *J* by Jeanette's answers to the questionnaire.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare answers. What's Jeanette's score? What kind of person is she?

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Word order of frequency adverbs

- **a** Underline the frequency adverbs (often, etc.) in the questionnaire.
 - **b** Choose the correct words in the rules.
 - Frequency adverbs go before/after the verb be.
 - Frequency adverbs go before/after other verbs.

VOCABULARY 3.7 > p133.

- **a** Put a frequency adverb in these sentences and make them true for you.
 - I get up at eight in the morning.
 I never get up at eight in the morning.
 - 2 I have breakfast before 9 a.m.
 - 3 I'm tired on Friday evenings.
 - 4 I study English in the evening.
 - 5 I'm happy on Monday mornings.
 - 6 I go to the cinema at the weekend.
 - 7 I'm late for my English class.
 - 8 I watch TV on Sunday afternoons.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences. How many are the same?

Are you an early bird or a night owl? Do the questionnaire to find out!

1 When I get up in the morning ...

- a I'm always happy and I have a lot of energy.
- **b** I'm sometimes happy, but I don't have a lot of energy.
- **c** I'm not very happy and I never have a lot of energy.

2 At the weekend ...

- a I sometimes get up before 9 a.m.
- **b** I always get up before 9 a.m.
- c I hardly ever get up before 9 a.m.

3 When I go to a party ...

- a I always stay to the end.
- **b** I sometimes stay to the end.
- c I never stay to the end.

4 When there's a good film on TV late at night ...

- a I always watch it to the end.
- **b** I usually record it and go to bed.
- **c** I often watch the beginning but I never see the end.

5 When I see friends at the weekend ...

- a I usually see them in the afternoon.
- **b** I sometimes have coffee with **them** in the morning.
- **c** I hardly ever see them before 9 p.m.

6 When a friend phones me before 8 a.m. ...

- a I'm always happy to talk to him/her.
- **b** I'm sometimes happy to talk to him/her.
- **c** I never answer the phone.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Subject and object pronouns

a Look at the words in pink and blue in these
 sentences. Which are subject pronouns? Which are object pronouns?

I usually see them in the afternoon.

We hardly ever see him in the week.

b Look at questions 4–6 in the questionnaire. Fill in the table with the object pronouns in blue.

subject pronouns	object pronouns
I	me
you	you
he	
she	
it	
we	us
they	

- c Check in GRAMMAR 3.5 > p134.
- a Choose the correct words.
 - 1 Lauren's my sister and ①/me see she/her every Sunday.
 - 2 Ian and I phone Eve a lot, but she/her never phones we/us.
 - 3 My name's Zachariah, but my friends always call //me Zak.
 - 4 Alexander's our son and we/us see he/him every weekend.
 - 5 Rob and Andy are my cousins, but *I/me* hardly ever talk to *they/them*.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare answers. Underline the object pronouns. Who do they refer to?
 - 1 her → Lauren
- **a** Write two things you: always, usually, sometimes, hardly ever do in the morning.

always - get up early, have coffee

b Work in new pairs. Compare answers. Are any the same?

I always get up early in the morning.



HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

How we say th

a CD1 66 Listen to these sounds and words. Notice the two ways we say *th*.

/θ/	/ð/
fourth thirteenth month birthday think thing Thursday teeth	the this that these those they their with mother
	father brother

- **b** Listen again and practise.
- **a** CD1 67 Listen to these sentences. Listen again and practise.
 - 1 Who's that over there with Matthew's father?
 - 2 It's Kathy's thirty-third birthday this Thursday.
 - 3 I think Beth's three brothers are with their mother.
 - 4 That's the sixth or seventh time this month.
 - 5 Thanks for taking those things to Theo's brother.
 - 6 I think those are their father's things.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Take turns to say the sentences. Is your partner's pronunciation correct?
 - c Say one of the sentences for the class.

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - Extra Practice 3 and Progress Portfolio 3 p117
 - Language Summary 3 p132
 - 3A-D Workbook p15
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 3 with Review Video



- Reading and Writing
 - Portfolio 3 All about me Workbook p68
 Reading learner profiles
 Writing connecting words (1): and, but, because;
 a learner profile

Away from home

Vocabulary free time activities (2)

Grammar Present Simple (3): positive and negative (he/she/it)

QUICK REVIEW Frequency adverbs Write sentences about things you: never, sometimes, always, often do on Saturdays. Work in pairs. Take turns to say your sentences. Are any the same?

Vocabulary and Speaking

Free time activities (2)

a Tick the phrases you know. Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 4.1 p135.

take photos go to the gym watch sport on TV play video games play tennis read books or magazines go cycling go swimming go running go clubbing listen to music listen to the radio

TIP • We can say play video games or play computer games.

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the free time activities in **1a**.

Do you watch sport on TV?

No, never.

Yes, every weekend.

Listening and Speaking

a Before you read and listen, check these words with your teacher.

an observatory stars the weather a holiday hot rain

- **b** Read the email and look at the photo. Where is Trevor? Who is Polly, do you think?
- c CD1 68 Listen to Polly and her friend, Lorna. Choose the correct answers.
- 1 Trevor is in Argentina/Chile.
- 2 Trevor and Polly are/aren't married.
- 3 Trevor's got three/four weeks' holiday.
- 4 The hotel is/isn't very good.
- a Work in pairs. What does Trevor do in his free time, do you think? Choose six activities from 1a.
 - **b** CD1 69 Listen to the rest of Polly and Lorna's conversation. Are your guesses correct?

HELP WITH LISTENING Linking (1)

- We usually link consonant (b, c, d, f, etc.) sounds at the end
 of a word with vowel (a, e, i, o, u) sounds at the beginning of
 the next word.
- 4 a CD1 70 Listen and notice the linking.

YOU EXPECT TO HEAR YOU USUALLY HEAR

And all of And all of

the people are nice the people are nice

And all of the people are nice. And all of the people are nice.

b Look at Audio Script CD1 69 p157. Listen again and notice the linking in Polly's part of the conversation.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Simple (3): positive and negative (he/she/it)

a Look at these sentences. Then complete the rules.

He plays video games.

He doesn't like the weather.

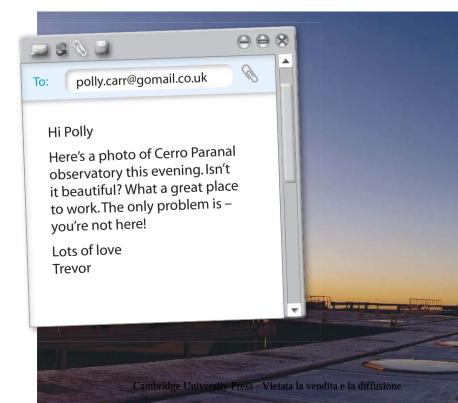
He watches lots of DVDs.

She doesn't talk to him very often.

- In positive sentences with he, she and it we add _____ or to the infinitive.
- In negative sentences with he, she and it we use _____ + infinitive.

TIP • have is irregular: he/she/it has ... : He has tennis lessons every week.

b Check in GRAMMAR 4.1 > p137.



a Check the spelling rules in GRAMMAR 4.2 p137. Then write the he/she/it forms of these verbs.

watch play go write phone get finish have study start do live

b CD1 71 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the infinitives and the he/she/it forms of the verbs in **6a**. Which have the sound /ız/ at the end?

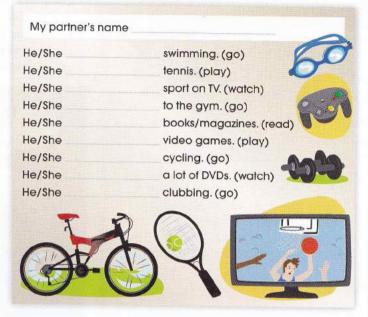
watch, watches /IZ/

Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Lorna and Polly are both sales assistants in London, but they 1 don't work (not work) in the same shop. Polly 2 (work) in a shoe shop and Lorna 3 (work) in a bookshop. In their free time they 4 (read) a lot. Lorna 5 (not like) sport, but Polly 6 (play) tennis a lot and she 7 (watch) sport on TV. At the weekend Lorna (not stay) in London. She 9 (go) to see her parents in Bath. Polly 10 (not visit) her parents very often because they 11 (not live) in England.

Get ready ... Get it right!

a Choose a partner, but don't talk to him/her. Look at the words/phrases in the box. Guess what your partner does or doesn't do in his/her free time. Complete the sentences with the positive or negative form of the verbs in brackets.



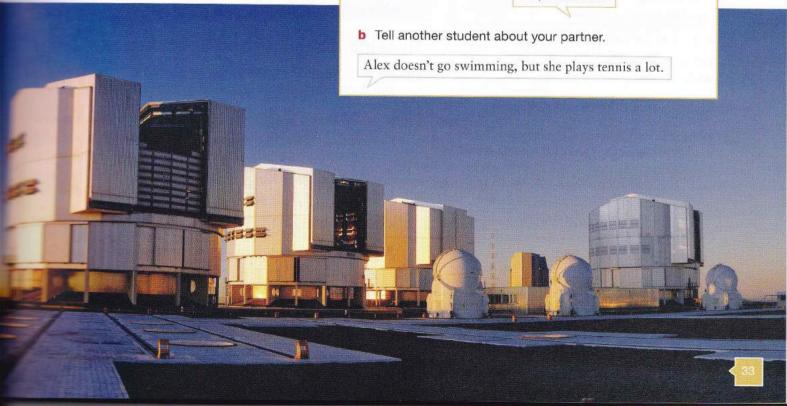
- **b** Make questions with *you* for each sentence in the box. Do you go swimming?
- a Work with your partner. Take turns to ask your questions. How many of your guesses are correct?

Do you go swimming?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

Yes, sometimes.



First Date!

Vocabulary things you like and don't like; verb+ing Grammar Present Simple (4): questions and short answers (he/she/it)

QUICK REVIEW Free time activities

Write eight free time activities. Work in pairs. Tell your partner when you do the things on your list: I play tennis on Fridays. I watch sport on TV at the weekend.

Vocabulary and Speaking

Things you like and don't like

Work in pairs. Which of these words/ phrases do you know? Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 4.2 > p135.

reading football travelling cats shopping for clothes video games animals dancing cooking dance music rock music jazz Italian food Chinese food fast food

Put these phrases in order 1-7.

I love ... 1 | hate ... 7 | like is/are OK. | don't like ... I really like ... | quite like ...

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Verb+ing

a With the phrases in 2 we can use verb+ing or a noun. Look at these sentences.

I love **reading**. (verb+ing)
I like **books**. (noun)

b Find all the verb+ing words in 1.

TIP • We use *enjoy* + verb+*ing* to say we like doing something: *I enjoy travelling*.

VOCABULARY 4.4 > p135

Work in pairs. Talk about the things in 1 and your own ideas. Do you like the same things?

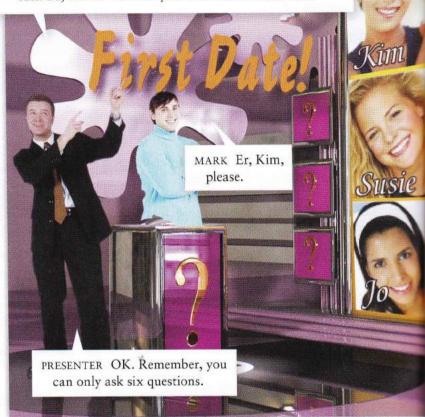
I really like video games.

Me too./I don't. I hate them.

Do you like dance music?

Yes, I love it./It's OK./No, not really.

PRESENTER Hello and welcome to *First Date!*. Tonight you choose a date for Mark Skipper. Mark is 28 years old and he's a teacher. In his free time he watches TV and plays video games. He also goes to the cinema a lot and he plays football and tennis every weekend. He loves rock music and Chinese food, but he hates shopping for clothes! He also likes animals – he's got a dog and three cats. So, Mark – who do you want to ask about first?



Reading, Listening and Speaking

- 5 Read and listen to the TV game show, First Date!. Find four things Mark likes and one thing he doesn't like.
- a Match Mark's questions about Kim to the presenter's answers
 - 1 What does she do in her free time?
 - 2 Does she watch TV a lot?
 - 3 Does she like films?
 - 4 What music does
 - 5 Does she like animals?
 - 6 And what does she do?

she like?

- a Yes, she does. She's got two dogs.
- b Yes, she goes to the cinema every Saturday evening.
- c She loves dance music, but she doesn't like rock music.
- d She plays tennis and she eats out a lot. She loves Italian food.
- e No, she doesn't. She hates watching TV!
- f She's a vet.
- b CDIP 73 Listen and check.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Simple (4): questions and short answers (he/she/it)

a Look at 6a. Then fill in the gaps with does or doesn't.

QI	UESTIONS	6	SHORT ANSWERS	
1		she like animals?	Yes, she	
2	***************************************	she watch TV a lot?	No, she	
3	What	she do in her free	time?	

b Look at the table. Notice the word order in questions. Then write questions 3 and 4 from **6a** in the table.

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What	does	she	do	in her free time?
	Does	she	watch	TV a lot?
		-		

- c Check in GRAMMAR 4.3 p137. Then read GRAMMAR 4.4 p137.
- 8 a Write questions with she.
 - 1 What / do? What does she do?
 - 2 / like rock music?
 - 3 What food / like?
 - 4 / like sport?
 - 5 / have any animals?
 - 6 What / do on Saturday evenings?
 - **b** CD1 74 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise. Copy the stress.

What does she do?

- c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in 8a about Kim. Find her answers in 6a.
- a Work in pairs. Student A, read about Jo on p105. Student B, read about Susie on p110. Find the answers to the questions in 8a.
 - **b** Work with your partner. Ask and answer the questions in **8a** about Jo or Susie.
 - c Tell your partner three more things about Jo or Susie.
- a Work in groups. Which woman do you want to choose for Mark's first date – Kim, Jo or Susie? Why?
 - Tell the class which woman your group wants for Mark's first date and why. The class must agree on one person!
 - Read about Mark's date with the woman the class chose.
 (Kim p106, Jo p111, Susie p114). Answer these questions.
 - Does Mark like her? Why?/Why not?
 - 2 Does she like Mark? Why?/Why not?
 - 3 Do they want to see each other again?

Get ready ... Get it right!

a Work in pairs, but don't talk to your partner. Choose a friend to introduce to your partner. Tick the things in the box that your friend does or likes.



b Choose eight things you do or like from the box. Make questions with he or she.

Does he/she watch TV a lot?

Does he/she like Italian food?

- a Work with your partner. Ask and answer questions about your friends. First, ask about the friend's name, age, job and where he or she lives. Then ask your questions from 11b.
 - **b** Do you and your partner's friend do or like the same things? Tell another student.

We both eat out a lot.

He likes rock music, but I don't.

£9.25

£8.75

£4.75

QUICK REVIEW Present Simple questions with he/she Write the names of three people in your family. Work in pairs. Ask questions about the people on your partner's list: What does Marcia do in her free time?





- Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 When do you usually eat out?
 - 2 What's your favourite café or restaurant?
 - 3 Is it cheap or expensive?
 - 4 What do you usually eat there?
- a Work in pairs. Match photos 1-13 to food and drink on the menu. Check in VOCABULARY 4.5 > p136.
 - b Work in pairs. Take turns to point to photos 1-13 and test your partner.

What's number 1?

A cheese and tomato sandwich.

Work in pairs. Take turns to choose something to eat and drink from the menu. Ask your partner questions with How much ... ?

> How much is a tuna salad and a bottle of mineral water?

> > Twelve pounds twenty-five.

The last		Cheeseburger and chips	£9.50
A	Salads	Tuna	£9.50
		Chicken	£10.25
		Mixed	£4.50
	Sandwiches	Egg mayonnaise	£5.75
		Cheese and tomato	£6.25
- 1	Desserts	Apple pie with cream	£5.25
		Fruit salad	£4.75
1 4		Vanilla, chocolate or	
		strawberry ice cream	£3.25

Neapolitan

Burger and chips

Drinks Red/White wine

Burgers

Bottle of beer	£3.75
Bottle of mineral water	
(still or sparkling)	£2.75
Tea or coffee	£2.50

(Glass)

(Bottle) £14.50

HELP WITH LISTENING Would you like ... ?

a CD1 75 We use Would you like ... ? for offers. Listen and notice how we say would you in questions.

YOU EXPECT TO HEAR YOU USUALLY HEAR would you /wud ju:/ would you /wudzə/ Would you /wud ju:/ like to order now? Would you /wudzə/ like to order now?

- b CD1-76 Listen and put these questions in the order you hear them.
- a Would you like tea or coffee?
- Would you like a dessert?
- Would you like anything else?
- d What would you like to drink?
- a VIDEO 4 CD1 77 Close your books. Watch or listen to Paul and Clare at the Sun Café. What do they order?
 - b Work in pairs. Compare answers.





WAITRESS Would you like to order now? CLARE Yes, I'd like the chicken salad, please. PAUL Can I have the cheeseburger and chips, please? WAITRESS 1 CLARE We'd like a bottle of mineral water, please. WAITRESS Still or sparkling? CLARE Sparkling, please. WAITRESS 2 PAUL No, that's all, thanks. WAITRESS 3 CLARE Yes, I'd like the fruit salad, please. PAUL And can I have the apple pie with cream? WAITRESS Certainly. WAITRESS 4 CLARE Not for me, thank you. PAUL No, thank you. Can we have the bill, please?

WAITRESS Yes, of course.

b VIDEO 4 CD1 77 Watch or listen again. Check your answers.





REAL WORLD

Requests and offers

- a Look at sentences 1–3. Which sentences are requests (we want something)? Which sentence is an offer (we want to give something or help someone)?
 - 1 Would you like to order now?
 - 2 I'd/We'd like a bottle of mineral water, please.
 - 3 Can I/we have the bill, please?
 - **b** Complete the rules with the phrases in bold in **7a**.
 - We use _____ and ____ for requests.We use _____ for offers.
 - Look at the conversation in 6a again.
 Find four more requests.

REAL WORLD 4.1 > p137

a CD1 78 Listen to the sentences in 7a. Notice the stress and polite intonation.

Would you like to order now?

- practise the offers and requests in the conversation in **6a**. Copy the stress and polite intonation.
- a Work in groups of three. Decide who is the waiter/waitress and who are the customers. Practise the conversation in 6a until you remember it.
 - **b** Close your book. Practise the conversation again.
- a Work in the same groups. Look at the menu. Write a new conversation between a waiter/waitress and two customers.
 - **b** Swap conversations with another group. Correct any mistakes.
 - c Practise the new conversation with your partner. Then role-play it for the other group.

VOCABULARY 4D AND SKILLS

Breakfast time

Vocabulary food and drink (2); countable and uncountable nouns Skills listening: a conversation

UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

QUICK REVIEW Food and drink Work in pairs. What's on the Sun Café menu? Work with another pair. Which pair has the most things? Check the menu on p36.

Tick the food and drink you know. Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 4.6 > p136.

biscuits milk an apple rice voaurt sugar toast bread fish eggs coffee sausages cheese a banana orange juice a croissant tea iam meat fruit cereal olives tomatoes vegetables

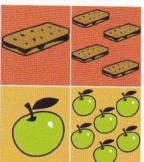
- Which of the things in 1 do you usually have for breakfast? Is this typical for your country? Compare answers in groups.
- a What do you think people in Japan, France and Turkey have for breakfast? Work in pairs and make three lists. Use words from 1.
 - **b** CD1 80 Listen to a chef and his assistant, Dylan, at a language school in the UK. Tick the food and drink on your lists that they talk about.
 - c Listen again. Complete your lists of the three breakfast menus.



a Look at the pictures in the table. Then choose the correct words.

- 1 We can/can't count biscuits and apples.
- 2 We can/can't count milk and rice.

COUNTABLE NOUNS



singular	plural

a biscuit

an apple



apples

b Write the words from **1** in the table. Write the singular and plural if possible.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Countable and uncountable nouns

a Look at the table in **4a**. Choose the correct words in these rules.

COUNTABLE NOUNS

- Countable nouns have/don't have a plural form.
- We use/don't use a or an with singular countable nouns.
- We use/don't use a or an with plural countable nouns.

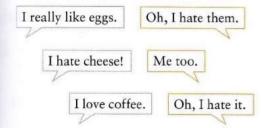
UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

- Uncountable nouns are/aren't usually plural.
- We use/don't use a or an with uncountable nouns.
- b Check in VOCABULARY 4.7 > p136.

- Choose the correct answer: a, an or (no article).
 - 1 Sue never has a / milk in her tea.
 - 2 I have an /- egg for breakfast every day.
 - 3 Do you want a/- biscuit?
 - 4 I love a/- cheese sandwiches.
 - 5 Ted usually has a/- soup for lunch.
 - 6 Would you like a/- banana?
 - 7 Do you eat a/- fruit?
- a Fill in the gaps with a, an or .
 - 1 I often have rice with my main meal.
 - 2 My friends and I sometimes go out for burger
 - 3 I always have <u>toast</u> and jam for breakfast.
 - 4 I never have sugar in coffee.
 - 5 I like ____ olives in my salad.
 - 6 I have <u>apple</u> every day.
 - 7 I often have <u>sandwich</u> for lunch.
 - 8 I never eat meat.
 - **b** Make the sentences in **7a** true for you. Change the underlined words if necessary.

I often have chips with my main meal.

- **c** Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Are any the same?
- Work in groups. Tell the other students which food and drink you like/don't like.



- a Imagine your perfect breakfast. Answer these questions.
- 1 Where are you?
- 2 What time is it?
- 3 Who are you with?
- 4 What do you have for breakfast?
- 5 What do you do after breakfast?
- b Work in groups. Tell the other students about your perfect breakfast.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

/ʃ/, /tʃ/ and /dʒ/

- 1 CD1 81 Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.
 - 1 /ʃ/ shopping finish Turkish
 - 2 /ts/ cheap watch children
 - 3 /d3/ Germany Japan sausages
- a Work in pairs. Match the letters in bold in these words to sounds 1–3 in 1.

English 1 cheese jam chicken vegetables sandwich musician engineer teacher Russia jazz nationality

- **b** CD1 82 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- a CD1 83 Listen to these sentences. Listen again and practise.
 - 1 My Russian teacher loves jazz.
 - 2 George eats a lot of jam sandwiches.
 - 3 Jane loves chocolate and Turkish coffee.
 - 4 Janet's got a cheap Japanese watch.
 - 5 Joe often has chicken and vegetables.
 - 6 Roger likes Spanish sausages, French cheese and German beer.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Take turns to say the sentences. Is your partner's pronunciation correct?

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - **Extra Practice 4 and Progress Portfolio 4 p118**
 - Language Summary 4 p135
 - 4A-D Workbook p20
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 4 with Review Video



- Reading and Writing
 - Portfolio 4 Going out Workbook p70 Reading restaurant adverts Writing messages (1): an email

Three generations

Vocabulary adjectives (2); years

Grammar Past Simple (1): be (positive and negative, questions and short answers)

QUICK REVIEW Food and drink Work in pairs. Write all the words for food and drink you know. Compare answers with another pair. Which pair has more words? Which words are countable/uncountable?

Vocabulary Adjectives (2)

a Work in pairs. Which of these adjectives do you know? Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 5.1 > p138.

hot cold noisy quiet well ill short lücky unlucky different the same happy unhappy boring interesting friendly unfriendly terrible/awful fantastic/amazing/wonderful

Work in pairs. Test your partner on the opposites.

happy

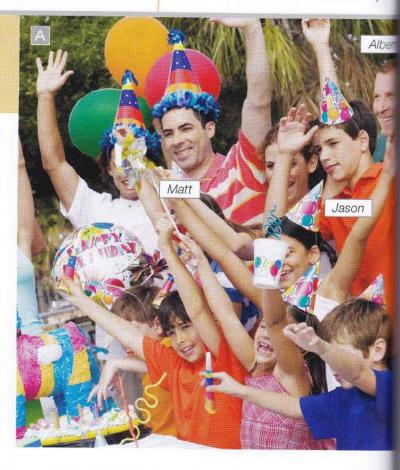
unhappy

Listening and Reading

- a Look at photo A. Where are the people? What's their relationship, do you think?
 - **b** GD2 1 Listen and read. Who is talking? How old is he?

I live in Bristol with my parents and my sister. It was my thirteenth birthday yesterday and there was a big party at our house. About thirty people were here, and we were lucky because it was a very hot day. I was happy because my granddad was here from Liverpool. There were only two things wrong. My best friend Robert wasn't here because he was ill. And my two brothers weren't here because they're in the USA. But it was a fantastic party!

- Read about the party again. Which of these things are <u>not</u> in the text?
- where the family lives
- the weather
- people at the party
- people not at the party
- food and drink
- birthday presents



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

c Check in GRAMMAR 5.1 > p139.

Past Simple (1): be (positive and negative)

- a Look at the text in 2b again. Underline all the examples of was, wasn't, were and weren't.
 - b Fill in the gaps with was, wasn't, were and weren't.

POSITIVE (+)	NEGATIVE (-)	
I was	I (= was no	ot)
you/we/they	you/we/they	(= were not)
he/she/it	he/she/it	

- Read about Matt's thirteenth birthday party. Choose the correct words.
 - I was/were born in Liverpool in 1974 and I was/were thirteen in 1987. Our house wasn't/weren't very big, so my party was/were at my grandparents' house. The house was/were cold and the food wasn't/weren't very nice. Only about twelve people was/were at the party and there wasn't/weren't any girls my age. So the party was/were a bit boring.



Listening and Speaking

- a CD2 2 Look at photo B. Listen to Jason ask his grandfather, Albert, about his thirteenth birthday party. Where was he? Why was his birthday a special day?
 - b Listen again and answer the questions.
 - 1 When was Albert's 13th birthday?
 - 2 Where was the party?
 - 3 Were his friends there?
 - 4 Was the food good?
 - 5 Where were his grandparents?

HELP WITH LISTENING

Weak forms (2): was and were

a CD2 3 Listen and notice the weak forms of was and were.

I was /wəz/ in Liverpool with my parents.

All my friends were /wə/ there.

Was /wəz/ the food good?

Were /wa/ your grandparents there?

b Look at Audio Script CD2 2 p158. Listen again and notice the weak forms of was and were in pink.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Past Simple (1): be (questions and short answers)

a Look at the table. Notice the word order. Then write questions 2, 4 and 5 from **5b** in the table.

question word	was/were	subject	
When	was	Albert's	13 th birthday?
	Were	his friends	there?
	-	1	

b Fill in the gaps in these short answers with was, were, wasn't or weren't.

Yes, I/he/she/it . No, I/he/she/it . Yes, you/we/they . No, you/we/they .

c Fill in the gaps with was or were.

1 A When you born?
B I born in 1940.

2 A Where ____ Matt born?

B He born in Liverpool.

d Check in GRAMMAR 5.2 p139.

8 CD2 4 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Copy the stress and weak forms.

I was /wəz/ in Liverpool with my parents.

a Work in pairs. How do we say these years?

1835 1900 1990 2000 2005 2018

b CD2 5 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

c Write the names of five people in your family. Then work in pairs. Swap papers. Ask your partner when and where the people were born.

When was Miguel born?

In 1986.

- a Make questions with you.
 - 1 / at work yesterday? Were you at work yesterday?
 - 2 Where / last night?
 - 3 / at home yesterday afternoon?
 - 4 Where / on your last birthday?
 - 5 Where / last New Year's Eve?
 - **b** Work in new pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Give more information if possible.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in pairs. Student A p105. Student B p110.

Famous films

Vocabulary life events

Grammar Past Simple (2): regular and irregular
verbs (positive and Wh- questions)

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple (1): be Write six times of the day. Work in pairs. Ask your partner where he/she was at these times yesterday: Where were you at six in the evening?

Vocabulary

married

Life events

a Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps in the phrases with these verbs. Check in VOCABULARY 5.3 > p138.

ave	make	becor	ne r	neet	get
lea	ve s	chool/un	iversity		
	n	ny husbar	nd/my	wife	
	n	narried/di	vorced		
	a	film/a lot	of moi	ney	
	a	film direc	ctor/fan	nous	
₩e	write	study	win	mov	/e
ha	ve cl	nildren/a	dream		
	h	ouse/to a	a differe	ent co	untry
	E	nglish/ph	ysics		
	а	book/a l	etter		
	ar	n Oscar/t	he lotte	ery	
	lea ve	leave some material and the leave write the leave of the leave and leave are leave are leave and leave are	leave school/un my husbar married/di a film/a lot a film directive write study have children/a house/to a English/ph a book/a le	leave school/university my husband/my married/divorced a film/a lot of more a film director/fan we write study win have children/a dream house/to a differe English/physics a book/a letter	leave school/university my husband/my wife married/divorced a film/a lot of money a film director/famous we write study win mov have children/a dream house/to a different co English/physics

Speaking, Reading and Listening

get married

- Work in groups. Look at posters A–D. What do you know about these films? What do you know about the director James Cameron?
- 3 a Check these words with your teacher.

a script a robot successful diving 3D a billion

b Read the article about James Cameron's life. Fill in the gaps with these dates and numbers.

1971 twelve 1999 two August 16th 1986 \$2 billion

- Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- d CD2 6 Listen and check your answers.

CAMERON'S WORLD

James Cameron was born in Ontario, Canada, on ^a
1954. His family moved to the USA in b James went
to California State University and studied physics and English.
He left university after only c years because he wanted
to become a film director. He worked as a bus driver in the day
and wrote film scripts at night. James's first job as a director was
on a film called Piranha 2. One night after filming he had a bad
dream about a robot from the future. The next day James started
writing the script of The Terminator. The film was very successfi
and Cameron became famous all around the world.
He then made Aliens in d, Terminator 2 in 1991
and <i>Titanic</i> in 1997. At that time James loved diving, and he
visited the Titanic ^e times before
he started making the film. Titanic made
f and won eleven Oscars. His
next film was the first Avatar movie in
2009, which he made in 3D.
James met Linda Hamilton – Sarah
Connor in the Terminator films – in 1984

James met Linda Hamilton – Sarah Connor in the *Terminator* films – in 1984 and she became his fourth wife in 1997. They had one daughter, but they got divorced in § ______. A year later he married actress Suzy Amis, who was in *Titanic*. They have two daughters and a son.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

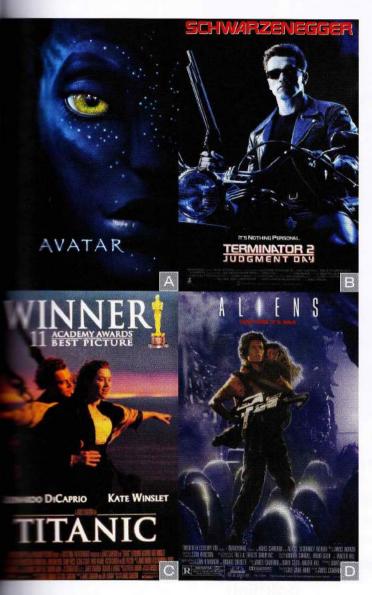
Past Simple (2): regular and irregular verbs (positive)

- a Look at the regular Past Simple forms in blue in the article. Then answer these questions.
 - 1 How do we make the Past Simple of regular verbs?
 - 2 What do we do when the verb ends in -e (move, love, etc.)?
 - 3 What do we do when the verb ends in -y (study, marry, etc.)?
 - **b** Look at the irregular Past Simple forms in pink in the article. Match them to verbs 1–9.

1	become	4	have	_ 7	meet
2	get	5	leave	8	win
3	go	6	make	9	write

TIP • The Past Simple is the same for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they).

c Check in GRAMMAR 5.3 p139 and in the Irregular Verb List, p167.



- a CD2 7 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the regular verbs in the article and their Past Simple forms. Which end with the sound /Id/?
 - b CD2 8 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the irregular verbs in 4b and their Past Simple forms.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Present Simple or Past Simple

- a CD2 9 Listen to these sentences. Notice the difference between the Present Simple and the Past Simple.
 - I love all his films. I loved all his films.
 - 2 They live in L.A. They lived in L.A.
 - b CD2 10 Listen to six pairs of sentences. Which do you hear first, the Present Simple or the Past Simple?
 - 1 Present Simple

Fill in the gaps with the Past Simple of these verbs.

	love marry	write	win	be	get	start	make
1	James Camer	on lov	ed file	ns wh	en he		a child.
2	Hebut they		n direc divorce			Bigelow	in 1989,
3	He	the sc	ript for	the se	econd	Rambo	film.
4	He	a film	called	True L	ies in '	1994.	
5	His film <i>Aliens</i>		tv	vo Os	cars.		
6	He	writing	g the so	cript fo	or Avata	ar in 199	95.

- a Cover the article. Choose the correct answers.
 - 1 What did James study at university?
 - a Physics.
 - b English.
- c Physics and English.
- 2 When did he make Terminator 2?
 - a In 1986.
- b In 1991.
- c In 1999.
- 3 Which film did he make in 3D in 2009?
 - a Aliens
- b Titanic
- c Avatar
- 4 Who did he marry in 1997?
 - a Sarah Connor, b Suzy Amis, c Linda Hamilton.
- b Look at the article. Check your answers.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Past Simple (2): Wh- questions

a Look at the table. Notice the word order in questions. Then write questions 3 and 4 from 8a in the table.

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	14 20
What	did	James	study	at university?
When	did	he	make	Terminator 2?

- b Check in GRAMMAR 5.4 p139.
- a Make questions with these words.
 - 1 yesterday / did / you / What / do ?
 - 2 go on holiday / you / did / last year / Where ?
 - 3 What / you / last weekend / do / did ?
 - 4 see / last month / How many films / you / did ?
 - 5 meet / you / your best friend / did / Where?
 - b CD2 11 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Notice how we say did you /dɪdʒə/. Listen again and practise.

What did you /did3ə/ do yesterday?

Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in 10a.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in pairs. Look at p114.

REAL

Four weekends

Real World showing interest; asking follow-up questions Vocabulary weekend activities

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple Write six verbs you know. Work in pairs. Say the verb to your partner. He/She says a sentence with the Past Simple form: A go B I went to England last year.

Weekend activities

a Work in pairs. Look at phrases 1-8. Then fill in the gaps with these words/ phrases, Check in VOCABULARY 5.4 > p138.

> for a couple of days a bad cold a report the house your homework at home all weekend your parents' house for lunch

a walk 1 go for the car 2 clean

the washing 3 do

an email 4 write

for the weekend 5 go away

a great time 6 have

a party 7 go to

with friends 8 stay

- b What are the Past Simple forms of the verbs in 1a?
- a Think of five things you did last weekend. Use phrases from 1a or your own ideas.
 - b Work in pairs. Ask your partner what he or she did last weekend. Find three things you both did.

What did you do last weekend?

I went for a walk on Sunday.

Me too.





goldfish

Had a quiet weekend. Stayed in and watched TV on Saturday. Last night I went to the cinema to see A Day in the Life.

10th June at 07.46 Like Comment Share

How was your weekend?

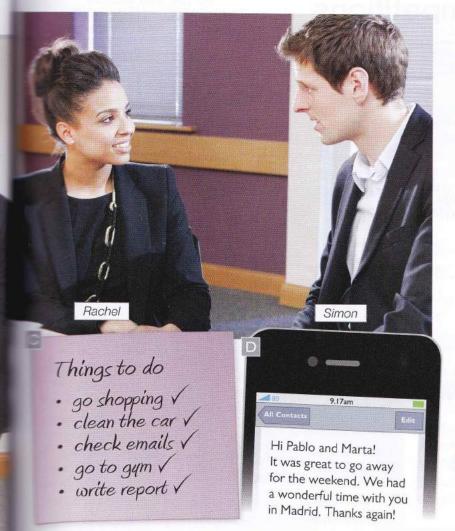
- a VIDEO 5 CD2 12 Look at the photos and read A-D. Then watch or listen to two conversations and match the people to A-D.
 - b Watch or listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

CONVERSATION 1

- 1 Tim had a terrible weekend. T
- 2 Emily did the washing on Saturday. 6 She stayed in a hotel.
- 3 She went to the theatre.
- 4 She didn't like the film.

CONVERSATION 2

- 5 Rachel went to Madrid with a friend.
- 7 Simon had an interesting weekend.
 - 8 He finished the report on Sunday evening.



REAL WORLD Showing interest

a CD2 13 Listen to parts of the conversations in 3b again.

Match sentences 1–8 to responses a–h.

- 1 | was ill all weekend.
- 2 I had a really bad cold.
- 3 | stayed at home on Saturday.
- 4 I went to the cinema.
- 5 | went away for the weekend to Spain!
- 6 We went to Madrid. It was wonderful!
- 7 | worked all Sunday.
- 8 It took me ten hours.
- o it took the territours.

- a Oh, right.
- b Wow!
- c Oh, dear.
- d What a shame.
- e Really?
- f You're joking!
- g Oh, nice.
- h Oh, great!
- b Fill in the table with responses a-h.

I'm happy for you.	I'm sorry for you.	I'm surprised.	I'm not surprised.
			Oh, right.
			100000

c Check in REAL WORLD 5.1 > p139.

5 CD2 14 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the responses in 4b. Copy the intonation.

REAL WORLD

Asking follow-up questions

- a Look at these follow-up questions from the conversations in 3b. Fill in the gaps with did, was or are.
 - 1 What ____ wrong?
 - 2 you OK now?
 - 3 What _____you do?
 - 4 What you see?
 - 5 What was it like?
 - 6 Where _____ you go?
 - 7 Who _____ you go with?
 - 8 Where _____ you stay?
 - **b** Which of the questions in **6a** can you ask someone who:
 - a was ill at the weekend?
 - b stayed at home?
 - c went to the cinema?
 - d went away for the weekend?
 - c Check in REAL WORLD 5.2 p139.
- a Work in pairs. Look at VIDEO 5 CD2 12 p158. Choose one of the conversations. Underline all the responses from 4a and follow-up questions from 6a.
 - **b** Practise the conversation with your partner.
- 8 a Make notes on what you did at these times.
 - last weekend
 - last week
 - yesterday
 - before you came to this lesson
 - on Friday evening
 - **b** Work in new pairs. Ask and answer questions about the times in **8a**. Use the follow-up questions from **6a**. How long can you continue each conversation?

What did you do last weekend?

Oh, nice. What was it like?

Well, I went to a party on Saturday.

It was great!

 Tell the class three things about your partner.

VOCABULARY 5D AND SKILLS

Competitions

Vocabulary adjectives (3); adjectives with very, really, quite, too Skills reading: a magazine article

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple Work in pairs. Take turns to tell your partner five things you did last week: A I went to a concert on Saturday. Ask follow-up questions to get more information: B What was it like?

a Work in pairs. Which of these adjectives do you know? Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 5.5 > p138.

bored crowded busy comfortable dirty rich dangerous clean poor excited safe empty

- b Put the words in 1a into groups a-c:
- a adjectives for people bored
- b adjectives for places crowded
- c adjectives for places and people busy
- **c** Work in pairs. Compare answers. Which words in **1a** are opposites?
- a Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

enter a competition win a prize a castle a queue a receptionist

- b Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
- 1 Do you think you're a lucky person? Why?/Why not?
- 2 Do you (or people you know) enter competitions in magazines or on the internet?
- 3 What prizes do people win in competitions?
- 4 What prize would you like to win?
- **c** Look at the magazine article. Read the first paragraph only. What is the article about?
- a Work in pairs. Student A, read about Bruce. Student B, read about Sally. Answer these questions.
 - 1 What did he/she win?
 - 2 Who did he/she go with?
 - 3 Did he/she like the hotel?
 - 4 What did they do on Saturday?
 - 5 Where did they have dinner?
 - 6 Was the food good?
 - 7 What did Bruce/Craig do on Sunday?
 - **b** Work with your partner and ask the questions. Student A, ask about Sally. Student B, ask about Bruce. Give more information if possible.
 - c Read your partner's text. Check his/her answers.

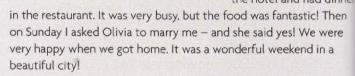
Winners and Losers

A lot of people enter competitions every year and 99% of them never win anything. But what about the winners? Do they always enjoy their prizes? We talked to two people with very different experiences.



BRUCE I won a weekend for two in Kraków, in Poland. I went with my girlfriend, Olivia, and we stayed in a very nice hotel by the river. The rooms were really comfortable and the people were very friendly. On Saturday we

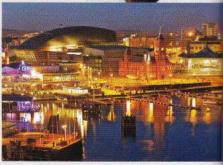
went for a walk in the Old Town. It was quite crowded, but all the shops and buildings were really interesting. We wanted to visit Wawel Castle, but the queues were quite long, so we had lunch instead. In the evening we went back to the hotel and had dinner



SALLY I'm not usually very lucky, but last year I won a weekend for two in Cardiff. I went with my boyfriend, Craig. I was really excited because I love Wales, but the hotel was really awful. It was in a poor part of town

and the rooms were very small and quite noisy. On Saturday we didn't leave the hotel because it was too cold. Craig watched sport on TV all day and I was really bored! We had dinner in the hotel, but the restaurant was quite dirty and the





food was awful. I went to bed early, but Craig stayed up and talked to the receptionist for hours. She was very young and friendly – too friendly! On Sunday Craig left me and went away with her. It was a terrible weekend!

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Adjectives with very, really, quite, too

a Look at pictures 1–3 and read the sentences. Which word in bold means 'more than you want'?







It's quite big. It's very/really big.

It's too big.

- Complete the rule with before and after.
- Very, really, quite and too come _____ the verb be and _____ adjectives.

WOCABULARY 5.6 > p138

- a Read the article again and underline all the examples of very, really, quite, too + adjective.
 - b Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- Choose the correct words.
 - Don't go out on your own at night. It's quite/(foo) dangerous.
 - 2 He's a famous musician and he's too/very rich.
 - 3 Let's go to that new café. It's really/too nice.
 - Sorry, sir, you're quite/too late. The restaurant is closed.
 - 5 This sofa's very/too comfortable.
 - Jill's got a new job and she's really/too happy.
 - It's a nice town and the people are very/too friendly.
 - You're only 15. You're quite/too young to drive.
- Write the name of a place in the town or city where you are now that is:
 - too expensive or quite cheap
 - really beautiful or really ugly
 - too crowded or quite empty
 - really boring or really interesting
 - 5 too noisy or very quiet
 - very safe or quite dangerous
 - Work in groups and compare places. Do you mow any of the places the other students talk about? If so, do you agree?

I think the new coffee shop is very cheap.

Me too.

Really? I think it's quite expensive!

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

The letter o

15 Listen and notice four ways we say the letter o. Listen again and practise.

/b/ hot long often / Λ / son month mother / θ U/ old home phone / θ / actor police second

Work in pairs. Write the words in the table.

eeffee sofa tomato wonderful shopping sometimes mobile computer open director bottle comfortable

/D/	hot	coffee
/əʊ/	old	
/Λ/	son	
/ə/	actor	

- b CD2>16 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- Work in pairs. Cover 1 and 2a. Say these words. Which letter o sound is different?
 - 1 tomato actor sometimes director
 - 2 phone wonderful mobile old
 - 3 son month bottle comfortable
 - 4 mother often hot shopping
 - 5 police second computer long
 - 6 open home sofa coffee

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - Extra Practice 5 and Progress Portfolio 5 p119
 - Language Summary 5 p138
 - 5A-D Workbook p25
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 5 with Review Video



Reading and Writing

Portfolio 5 A night to remember Workbook p72
 Reading a student's composition
 Writing paragraphs (1); connecting words (2): after, when and then; a composition

Google it!

Vocabulary the internet Grammar Past Simple (3): negative, yes/no questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Adjectives with very, really, quite, too Think of three places you went to last year. Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the places. Use adjectives with very, really, quite and too: I went to Istanbul last year. It was really beautiful.

Vocabulary and Speaking

The internet

- a Choose the correct verbs in these sentences about the internet. Then check in VOCABULARY 6.1 > p140.
 - 1 Do you use /send the internet every day?
 - 2 How many emails do you go/send every day?
 - 3 How many emails do you get/chat every day?
 - 4 When did you last chat/read a blog?
 - 5 Do you download/go videos or music onto your computer?
 - 6 When did you last go/send online?
 - 7 Do you get/have a favourite website?
 - 8 Do you send/chat to your friends online?
 - 9 Which places in your town or city have/download WiFi?
 - 10 Which search engine do you usually write/use?
 - **b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Ask follow-up questions if possible.

Reading and Speaking

a Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

launch computer science build (past: built) a cheque a bank account a billionaire

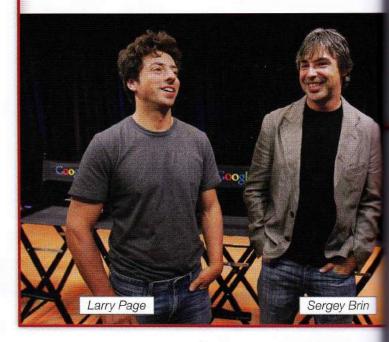
- **b** Read the article about the Google Guys. Match headings a-d to paragraphs 1-4.
- a Starting the business
- b How Page and Brin met
- c The internet before 1998
- d Building a new search engine
- Read the article again. Tick the true sentences.
 Correct the false sentences.

difficult

- Before 1998 it was easy to find things on the internet. F
- 2 Page and Brin first met in 1997.
- 3 They had a lot of cheap computers in their room.
- 4 They built Google when they were students.
- 5 Google was the first name for their search engine.
- 6 Page and Brin became billionaires in 2004.

THE Google guys

1 What did we do before Google? In the early days of the internet, search engines weren't very good and it wasn't easy for people to find the information they wanted. Then in 1998, Larry Page and Sergey Brin launched the Google search engine. Suddenly it was easy to find the right website in seconds.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Past Simple (3): negative

Complete the rules with words from these sentences Search engines weren't very good.

They didn't like each other at first.

- To make the Past Simple negative of the verb be, we use wasn't or
- To make the Past Simple negative of all other verbs, we use + infinitive.

GRAMMAR 6.1 > p141

- a Find six more Past Simple negatives in the article.
 - b Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- 5 CD2 17 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

 They didn't like each other at first.

- 2 So how did it all begin? Page and Brin met in 1995 when they started studying computer science at Stanford University in California. They didn't like each other at first, but they became friends when they shared a room together at university.
- While Page and Brin were at Stanford, they got a lot of cheap computers and started to build a new search engine in their room. At first they called it BackRub, but they weren't happy with the name so they changed it to Google. They didn't finish their course and left Stanford in 1997.
- Page and Brin wanted to start a business together, but they didn't have any money. At first their families and friends helped them. Then in August 1998 a businessman wrote a cheque to Google Inc for \$100,000. But Page and Brin didn't get the money for a month because they didn't have a bank account. Six years later they were billionaires!
- a Tick the sentences that are true for you. Make the other sentences negative.
 - I got lots of emails yesterday.
 I didn't get lots of emails yesterday.
 - 2 I watched a DVD on my computer last Saturday.
 - 3 I used the internet every day last week.
 - 4 I downloaded a lot of music last weekend.
 - 5 I got a new laptop last year.
 - 6 I chatted online with a friend last night.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare sentences. How many are the same?

Listening and Speaking

a CD2 18 Listen to a radio interview with the writer, Wes Clark. Put these people, places and things in the order you hear them.

Michigan State University Wes Clark's new book 1
Russia Sergey's mother Maryland University
Larry's parents Sergey's father

- b Listen again. Answer the questions.
- 1 Did Sergey leave Russia in 1978?
- 2 Did his father teach mathematics?
- 3 Were Sergey and his father at the same university?
- 4 Did Larry go to Maryland University?
- 5 Did his parents teach computer science?
- 6 Was Larry at the same university as his parents?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Past Simple (3): yes/no questions and short answers

Fill in the gaps in these yes/no questions and short answers with did or didn't.

1	Α	Did	Sergey leave Russia in 1978?
	В	Yes, he	e/No, he
2	Α		his parents teach computer science'
	В	Yes, th	ey/No, they
G	RAM	IMAR 6.2	p141

- 9 a Make yes/no questions with these words.
 - in 1994 / Sergey and Larry / meet / Did ? Did Sergey and Larry meet in 1994?
 - 2 they / at first / each other / Did / like ?
 - 3 Sergey / Did / Maryland University / go to?
 - 4 Larry's parents / teach / mathematics / Did ?
 - 5 study / Sergey / Did / computer science ?
 - 6 launch / Google / in 1999 / Sergey and Larry / Did ?
 - b CD2 19 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in **9a** and the short answers. Copy the stress.

Did Sergey and Larry meet in 1994?

c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in 9a.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Write yes/no questions with you and these ideas. Use these verbs.

go play have read watch (x2) go to (x2)

- 1 shopping last weekend?
 Did you go shopping last weekend?
- 2 a good book last month?
- 3 sport on TV last weekend?
- 4 a concert last month?
- 5 tennis or football last week?
- 6 a DVD last weekend?
- 7 the cinema last week?
- 8 dinner at home last night?
- a Ask other students your questions. Find one person who did each thing. Ask follow-up questions.
 - **b** Tell the class two things about the people you talked to.

Beata went shopping last weekend. She bought a new laptop.

6B

Changing technology

Vocabulary mobile phones and TVs; past time phrases Grammar can/can't; could/couldn't

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple yes/no questions
Write five questions with Did you 2 about

Write five questions with *Did you ...*? about yesterday. Choose a partner and guess his/her answers. Then work with your partner and ask the questions. How many guesses were correct?

Vocabulary and Speaking

Mobile phones and TVs

a Work in pairs. Which of these words/ phrases do you know? Check in VOCABULARY 6.2 > p140.

send/get a text charge your phone GPS a channel a TV programme a battery an app turn on turn off record

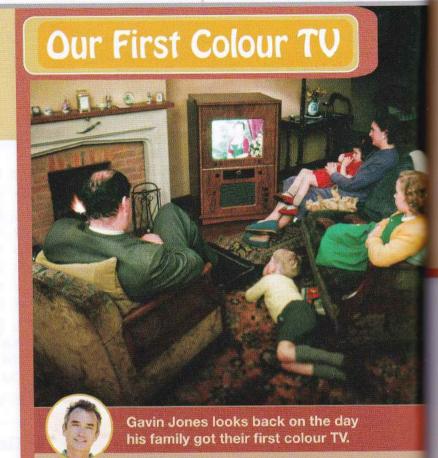
- **b** Work on your own. Put the words/phrases into three groups: TVs, mobile phones, TVs and mobile phones.
- Work in pairs. Compare answers. Did you put the words/phrases in the same groups?
- 2 a Put these past time phrases in order.

twenty minutes ago 1 in 1986
two years ago last year
in May 2002 last Monday
in the eighteenth century yesterday
the day before yesterday in the nineties

- b Fill in the gaps with ago, last or in.
- 1 | left school four years ago .
- 2 I went to bed quite late _____ Saturday.
- 3 My parents were born _____ the sixties.
- 4 My parents got married _____ 1985.
- 5 I didn't have a holiday _____ year.
- 6 I started learning English six years
- 7 I got my mobile March.
- 8 I bought my computer two years
- c Tick the sentences in 2b that are true for you. Change the time phrases in the other sentences to make them true for you.

I left school ten years ago.

d Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Are any the same?



These days the internet, laptops, mobiles and video games are part of normal life. My son and daughter can't understand how people lived without them. But life wasn't always like this. I was a child in the seventies, when things were very different.

I remember my family's first TV very well. In the seventies you could only get three channels – and they were in black and white.

Everybody watched live TV all the time because you couldn't record TV programmes. And you couldn't watch TV all night because there weren't any programmes after midnight!

Reading and Speaking

a Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

without colour black and white live TV explain

- b Read the article. How was TV different in the seventies?
- Read the article again. Answer these questions.
- 1 How many children has Gavin got?
- 2 When was Gavin a child?
- 3 When did his family get their first colour TV?
- 4 What did his family do that evening?
- 5 What type of TV has Gavin got now?

Then, in June 1974, my life changed for ever. I came home from school and there it was – our family's first colour TV. I was really excited because I could watch all my favourite programmes in colour! After dinner my father turned on the TV for the first time and my grandfather took a photo. Then the whole family watched TV together until midnight with biscuits and cups of hot chocolate. It was one of the best evenings of my life – and I've still got the photo!

Of course, now you can choose from hundreds of TV channels and watch anything you want at any time of day. You can watch TV programmes online and download them onto your mobile. So I think children today are very lucky – but I can't explain this to my kids because they're too busy watching football on our 3D TV!

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

can/can't; could/couldn't

- a Look at the phrases in blue in the article.
 Complete the rules with can and could.
 - We use _____ + infinitive to say that something is possible in the present.
 - We use _____ + infinitive to say that something was possible in the past.
 - **b** Look at the phrases in pink in the article. What is the negative of can? What is the negative of could?
 - c Fill in the gaps in these questions and short answers with can, can't, could or couldn't.
 - 1 A Can you watch TV online?
 - B Yes, you _____./No, you ____
 - 2 A you record programmes in 1974?
 - B Yes, you ____./No, you

TIP • Can/can't and could/couldn't are the same for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they).

d Check in GRAMMAR 6.3 > p141.

HELP WITH LISTENING can and can't

a CD2 20 Listen to these sentences. Notice how we say can and can't. When is can stressed?

You can /kən/ watch TV programmes online. I can't /ka:nt/ explain how lucky they are. Can /kən/ you watch TV online?

Yes, you can /kæn/. No, you can't /ka:nt/.

- **b** CD2 21 Listen to these sentences. Do you hear can or can't?
- 1 can't

6 CD2 22 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Copy the stress and weak form of can.

You can /kən/ watch TV programmes online.

a Read about mobile phones. Fill in the gaps with can, can't, could or couldn't.

Motorola launched the first mobile phone in 1983, but you ¹ <u>could</u> (+) only use it in a car because it needed a big battery. A few years later you ² _____ (+) buy a mobile that you ³ ____ (+) take to work – but it was in a suitcase!

These days most people 8 (-) leave home

without their mobile. You 9 _______(+) use your phone to go online, make video calls and find your way with GPS. You 10 _______(+) also download apps, watch TV programmes or play games. But a lot of people still 11 _______(-) remember to charge their phone or turn it off in the cinema!



- b CD2>23 Listen and check your answers.
- a Write four sentences with could and couldn't about your first mobile.

I could send texts with my first mobile. I couldn't make video calls.

b Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Are any the same?

Get ready ... Get it right!

- Make notes on what you can and can't do with these things.
 - your mobile (and apps)
 your computer/laptop
 your TV
 my mobile I can make video calls, send texts, find restaurants ...
- a Work in pairs. Ask questions to find out what you can do with the things in 9, but your partner can't do.

Can you make video calls on your mobile?

Yes, I can.

b Tell the class two things you found out about your partner's mobile, computer or TV.

REAL



Real World talking about the news Vocabulary verbs from news stories

QUICK REVIEW Past time phrases Work in pairs. Take turns to ask your partner when he/she last did these things: cook a meal, eat out, play tennis, go clubbing, read a good book, go to the cinema. Ask follow-up questions. A When did you last cook a meal? B Two weeks ago. A What did you cook?

The one o'clock news

- Work in groups. Discuss these guestions.
 - 1 Where do you usually get your news the internet, the TV. the radio or newspapers?
 - 2 Do you watch or listen to the news every day? If so, at what time of day?
 - 3 What's in the news at the moment?
- a Work in pairs. Which of these verbs do you know? What are the Past Simple forms of the irregular verbs? Check in VOCABULARY 6.4 > p140.

REGULAR VERBS	IRREGULAR VERBS		
damage sail	buy lose		
die receive	find put		
crash save	say tell		

- b CD2 24 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise all the verbs in 2a and their Past Simple forms.
- a Before you listen, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

a train a hospital a couple a storm missing at sea the coast a helicopter an envelope a boat

b Work in pairs. Look at photos A-D of some news stories. Which words are in each story, do you think?

- CD2 25 Listen to the news and put photos A-D in order.
 - b Listen again and choose the correct answers.
 - 1 a Over 16/60 people are in hospital after a train crash.
 - b The train crashed in London/Scotland.
 - 2 a There were storms in Florida/California last night.
 - b 53/153 people died in the storms.
 - 3 a Bill and Nancy Potter are 70/80 years old.
 - **b** They are now in Australia/missing at sea.
 - 4 a Joe Hall won over £3/£13 million last night.
 - b Joe/His dog chose the lottery numbers.

HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress (3)

a GD2 25 Listen again to the first two sentences from the news. Notice the stressed words.

It's one o'clock and here's George Lucan with the news.

Over sixty people are in hospital after a train crash in Scotland this morning.

b Look at Audio Script 602 25 p159. Listen again and follow the stressed words.

Read all about it!

Look at the headlines on page 53 of two news reports from the next day. Which TV news stories are they about?







COUPLE FOUND AT SEA

Bill and Nancy Potter, the 80-year-old British couple who were missing at sea, are now safe. A helicopter found them a hundred miles from the Australian coast and took them to a hospital in Sydney.

The weather was beautiful when we left New Zealand," said Nancy. "But when we were about a hundred and fifty miles from Sydney there was a terrible storm. There was a lot of damage to the boat. Things were really bad and we couldn't use the radio because that was damaged too. All we could do was wait for help. We were very happy to see the helicopter. Those people saved our lives."

The couple bought the boat two years ago. "We wanted to be the first 80-year-old couple sail round the world," said Bill. "Nancy wants to try again next year, but I'm not so sure."

- 🔽 a Work in two groups. Group A, read report 1 and answer questions 1-5. Group B, read report 2 and answer questions a-e.
 - 1 Where did the helicopter find Bill and Nancy?
 - 2 Which city are they in now?
 - 3 Where were they when the storm started?
 - Why didn't they use their radio?
 - When did they buy their boat?
 - a What did Joe do yesterday?
 - What did he write on the envelopes?
 - Where did he put them?
 - Why did the dog want to find the envelopes?
 - What does Joe want his dog to do now?
 - **b** Work in pairs. Student A, ask your partner questions a-e. Student B, ask your partner questions 1-5.

What happened?

- a VIDEO 6 CD2 26 Watch or listen to four conversations about the news. Which news story is each conversation about?
 - b Watch or listen again. Match sentences 1–6 to responses a-f.
 - Over thirteen million pounds.
- a Oh no, that's terrible.
- 2 His dog chose the numbers for him!
- Really?
- Over sixty people are
- You're joking!
- in hospital.
- d Oh, dear. Are they OK?
- 4 Did you hear about the storms in Florida?
- Their boat was damaged in a storm.
- e Oh, that's good.
- 6 Yes, a helicopter found them yesterday.
- f Yes, isn't it awful?

DOG WINS LOTTERY!

Wednesday night's lottery winner Joe Hall received a cheque for over £13 million yesterday at the supermarket where he works. His dog, Max, who chose the winning numbers, was there with him.

"I usually choose the numbers," said 28-year-old Joe. "But I never win anything. So this time I asked Max to choose the numbers for me - and I won over £13 million!"

But how did the dog choose the numbers? "I wrote the numbers 1 to 50 on envelopes and put a dog biscuit in each envelope," Joe explained. "I put the envelopes in different places in my house and told Max to find the biscuits. Then I wrote down the numbers from the first six envelopes he found - and now I'm a millionaire!"

Now Joe wants Max to find him a girlfriend!

REAL WORLD Talking about the news

a Fill in the gaps in the questions and responses with these words.

happened about was hear 1 A Did you about that train crash? B No, where 2 A Did you read the eighty-year-old couple and their boat? B No, what

b Write responses a-f in 8b in the table.

good news bad news surprising news Really?

- c Check in REAL WORLD 6.1 > p141.
- CD2 27 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions and responses in 9a and 9b. Copy the stress and intonation.

Did you hear about that train crash? No, where was it?

Work in pairs. Student A p106. Student B p111.

VOCABULARY 6D AND SKILLS

Mario Man

Vocabulary articles: a, an and the Skills reading: a fact file; listening: a radio programme

QUICK REVIEW Irregular verbs Work in pairs. What can you remember about the four news stories from 6C? Compare ideas with another pair. Then check on p52 and p53.

- Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 Do you play video games? If so, discuss questions a-d. If not, discuss questions e-h.
 - a What games do you play?
 - b How often do you play?
 - c When and where do you play?
 - d What's your favourite game?
 - e Why don't you play video games?
 - f Do your friends or family play them?
 - g Did you play when you were young?
 - h Do you know any video games?
 - 2 Do you think video games are a good or a bad thing? Why?/Why not?
- a Before you read, check these words with your teacher.

a designer art an award a hero a villain a princess a prince

- **b** Read about Shigeru Miyamoto. Answer the questions.
- 1 What's Shigeru's job?
- 2 Who does he work for?
- 3 Where was he born?
- 4 Where did he study?
- 5 Is he married?
- 6 What was his wife's job at Nintendo?
- 7 Does he play a lot of video games?
- 8 Who is his favourite video game character?
- 3 CD2 28 Listen to the beginning of a radio programme about Shigeru Miyamoto. Fill in gaps 1–7 in the fact file.



Born

Kyoto, Japan, November 16^{th 1}_____.

Education

Studied art at Kanazawa College of Art from 1970 to 2

Awards

Between 1998 and 2010 he won awards in the USA, the UK, ³ and Spain.

Family life

Married with two children, a boy and a girl. Met his wife, Yasuko, when she was a manager at Nintendo in Japan.

Interesting facts

Doesn't play video games very often. Usually goes to work by ⁴. Can write with both hands, but usually uses his left hand. Can play the guitar and write ⁵

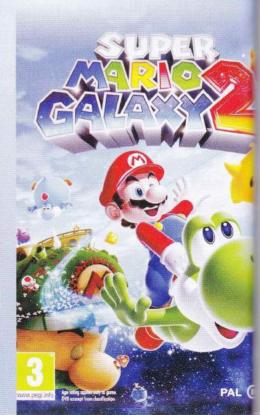
Once said

"They say video games are for you. But that's what they said about rock 'n' roll."

The video games

Shigeru designed the first Mario
Brothers game in ⁷ and
Mario is his favourite video game
character.

All Mario Bros. video games have a story. The story always has a hero, a princess and a villain. The villain wants to marry the princess, so he takes her to a place where the hero can't find her. But the hero always finds the place and saves the princess from the villain. And that's the end of the game.



HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Articles: a, an and the

a Look at the words in bold in these sentences.
Then complete the rules with a or the.

People call him the father of video games.

The story always has a hero, a princess and a villain.

The villain wants to marry the princess.

- 1 We use _____ when we know which thing, person, place, etc. because there is only one.
- 2 We use _____ or an to talk about things or people for the first time.
- We use _____ to talk about a person or a thing for the second, third, fourth, etc. time.

TIP • We use the in some fixed phrases: at **the** weekend, in **the** evening, go to **the** cinema, etc.

- b Check in VOCABULARY 6.5 > p140.
- Work in pairs. Look at the words in bold in the last paragraph of the fact file. Match the words in bold to rules 1–3 in 4a.
- a Read about a new video game. Fill in the gaps with a, an and the.



I bought 1 a new video game at 2 weekend. game is about 4 beautiful princess. _ princess goes for 6 One day 5 walk. She meets old man and 8 beautiful white dog. 9 old man takes 10 princess away because he wants to marry her. But 11 dog saves 12 princess from old man. Then at 14 end of 15 game, you find out that 16 dog is really 17 prince.

- b Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- a Choose the correct word.
 - 1 Did you have a/the big lunch yesterday?
 - 2 Is there a/the park near your home?
 - 3 Did you go to a/the capital city of another country last year?
 - 4 Do you often go to a/the cinema at a/the weekend?
 - 5 What was a/the last film you saw?
 - 6 Is there a/the TV programme you watch every week?
 - **b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Ask follow-up questions if possible.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

Past Simple of regular verbs

- a CD2 29 Listen to these regular verbs and their Past Simple forms. Notice how we say the -ed endings.
 - 1 watch → watched /t/ ask → asked /t/
 - 2 stay → stayed /d/ enjoy → enjoyed /d/
 - 3 start → started /id/ want → wanted /id/

TIP • When a regular verb ends in /t/ or /d/, -ed is pronounced /td/.

- b Listen again and practise.
- a Work in pairs. Which Past Simple form has an /id/ ending?
 - 1 moved loved (wanted)
 - 2 downloaded liked played
 - 3 lived crashed chatted
 - 4 listened hated worked
 - 5 recorded travelled finished
 - 6 walked visited phoned
 - **b** GD2 30 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- Work in pairs. Take turns to say a verb from 1a or 2a. Your partner says the Past Simple form.

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - **Extra Practice 6 and Progress Portfolio 6 p120**
 - Language Summary 6 p140
 - 6A-D Workbook p30
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 6 with Review Video



Reading and Writing

Portfolio 6 Text me! Workbook p74
 Reading entertainment adjectives
 Writing messages (2); a text message

QUICK REVIEW Verbs Work in pairs.
Can you write one verb for each letter of the alphabet? A = ask, B = buy, C = come, etc. Compare verbs with another pair.
Which pair has the most verbs?

Vocabulary

Places in a town

a Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Then do the exercise in Language Summary VOCABULARY 7.1 > p142.

a building a house a flat a square a market a station a bus station a park a museum a theatre a cinema a hotel a café a restaurant a shop a bar a pub an airport a beach a road

b Look again at the pictures on p142. Take turns to cover the words and test your partner.

What's picture n?

It's a hotel.

Listening and Speaking

- a Look at photos 1–3. Which is: a big city, a small town, a village? Which things from 1a can you see in the photos?
 - **b** CD2 32 Listen to conversations A–C. Match them to the photos and the things the people talk about 1–3.
 - 1 where he/she lives now
 - 2 where his/her grandparents live
 - 3 where he/she went last weekend
- a Work in pairs. Which conversation talks about these things?
 - 1 beautiful old buildings
 - 2 a flat near a beach
 - 3 a great place to go out at night
 - 4 a place two hours from an airport
 - 5 pubs that have very good food
 - 6 a good place to go for walks
 - b Listen again. Check your answers.





HELP WITH LISTENING Weak forms (3): prepositions

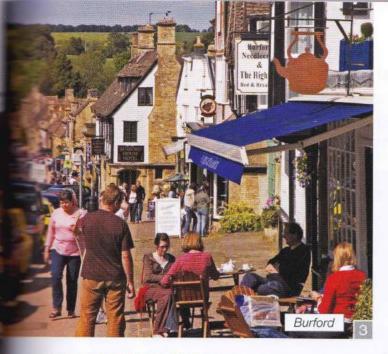
- Remember: we often say small words (do, does, you, was, were, can, etc.) with a schwa /a/. These are called weak forms.
- a GD2 33 Listen to these sentences from conversations A and B. Notice how we say the prepositions in pink. Are these words stressed?

We lived there for $f_9/12$ years and then we moved to $t_9/12$ London. I stayed at $t_9/12$ home all weekend.

It's about two hours from /frəm/ Cork airport.

And all of /əv/ the houses are different colours!

- **b** Look at Audio Script CD2 32 p160. Listen to conversations A and B again. Notice how we say the prepositions and the other weak forms in pink.
- a Work in groups. Which place would you like to visit: Eyeries, Brisbane or Burford? Why?
 - **b** Compare answers with the class. Which place is the most popular?



HELP WITH GRAMMAR there is/there are

a Fill in the gaps in the tables with 's, is, are, isn't or aren't.

	singular		
POSITIVE (+)	There	a nice beach.	
NEGATIVE (-)	There	a station.	
QUESTIONS (?)	there a hotel?		
SHORT ANSWERS	Yes, there	./No, there	
	163, 111616	./No, there	
	plural	/No, there	•
POSITIVE (+)		lots of things to do.	•
POSITIVE (+) NEGATIVE (-)	plural		
	plural There There	lots of things to do.	

TIP • We use any in negatives and questions with there are.

- **b** What is the Past Simple of there is and there are?
- c Check in GRAMMAR 7.1 > p144.
- a Look at these sentences about Burford. Fill in the gaps with There's, There are, There isn't or There aren't.
 - 1 (✓) There are lots of good shops.
 2 (✗) There isn't a station.
 3 (✓) a market every weekend.
 4 (✗) any five-star hotels.
 5 (✗) a theatre.
 6 (✓) lots of nice cafés.
 7 (✓) an interesting museum.
 8 (✗) an airport near the town.
 - b CD2 34 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 7a. Notice how we say there's /ŏeəz/ and there are /ŏeərə/.

a Look at the table. Complete questions 1–8 with *Is there* or *Are there*.

places near my home		me	my partner
1	a station?		
2	any shops?		
3	a hotel?		
4	a market?		
5	any good restaurants?		
6	a park?		
7	a cinema or a theatre?		
88	any nice cafés?		

- **b** Think about places near your home. Put yes or no in the me column.
- c CD2 35 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in 8a and the short answers.

Is there a station? Are there any shops?

d Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **8a**. Write yes or no in the my partner column. Continue the conversation if possible.

Is there a station near your home?

Yes, there is. It's about ten minutes away.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Ohoose your favourite town, city or village in your country (not the one you're in now). Tick the things in the box that are in this place and cross out the things that aren't.

My favourite place is:

beautiful/famous buildings big/small parks
a market a square an airport a beach
old/new houses interesting shops
a museum a theatre a cinema a station
cheap/expensive restaurants
nice cafés, bars or pubs good hotels

a Work in groups. Tell the other students about your favourite place.

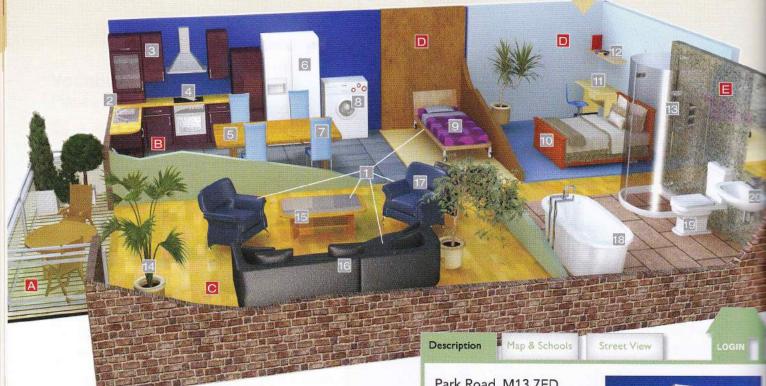
There are lots of beautiful buildings and two big parks.

b Choose one of your group's places that you would like to visit. Tell the class why you want to go there.

A new home

Vocabulary rooms and things in a house Grammar How much ... ? and How many ... ? some, anv, a

QUICK REVIEW there is/there are Work in groups. Talk about the good and bad things about the town or city you're in now. Use there is, there are, there isn't, and there aren't.



Vocabulary Rooms and things in a house

- Read the advert and look at the plan of the flat. Match the words in bold to A-E on the plan.
- Match these things in a house to 1-20 on the plan.

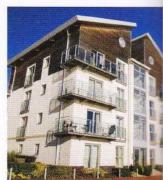
furniture 1 a double bed 10 a single bed a fridge a coffee table a bath a shower a cooker a toilet a sink a desk a plant a sofa an armchair a washing machine a washbasin a table a chair a cupboard a shelf

- Look again at the advert and the plan of the flat. Answer these questions.
 - 1 How much space is there? 80m²
 - 2 What's the postcode of the flat?
 - 3 How many bedrooms are there?
 - 4 How much is the rent?
 - 5 How many chairs are there in the kitchen?
 - 6 How many plants are there?
 - 7 How much furniture is there in the living room? Make a list.

Park Road M13 7ED

Large flat (80m²) for rent in city centre. On quiet street near station and park. Large kitchen, living room, bathroom, two bedrooms, small balcony. No garden.

Rent: £800 per month



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

How much ... ? and How many ... ?

a Which of these nouns are countable (C)? Which are uncountable (U)?

table C bedroom furniture people money chair space plant

b Look again at the questions in 3. Then complete the rules with How much ... ? or How many ... ?.

- We use with plural countable nouns.
- We use with uncountable nouns.
- c Check in GRAMMAR 7.2 > p144.



a Fill in the gaps with How much or How many.

1 How many people live in your home? 2 rooms are there? 3 furniture is there in your living room? 4 TVs are there in your home? 5 time do you spend watching TV every day? 6 pictures are there in your bedroom? 7 time do you spend cleaning the house every week?

b CD2 36 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise. Copy the stress. How many people live in your home?

c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **5a**. Are any of your partner's answers surprising?

Listening and Speaking

- a CD2 37 John and his wife, Becky, want to find a flat. Listen to their conversation with the estate agent. Put the things they talk about in order.
 - a the furniture 1 c the kitchen e the rent
 - b the bathroom d the bedrooms f shops
 - b Listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?
 - 1 There's some furniture in the flat. T
 - 2 There's a TV in the flat.
 - 3 The estate agent says there are two big bedrooms.
 - 4 John and Becky haven't got any children.
 - 5 The estate agent says there isn't a cooker.
 - 6 There aren't any shops near the flat.
 - 7 John and Becky don't want to see the flat.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR some, any, a

a Fill in the gaps in the table with some, any or a.

	singular countable nouns	plural countable nouns	uncountable nouns
+	There's a cooker.	There are some chairs.	We'd likeinformation.
-	There isn't TV.	We haven't got children.	I haven't got any money.
?	Has it gotshower?	Are thereshops?	Is there furniture?

- b When do we use some and any?
- c Check in GRAMMAR 7.3 > p144.
- 8 CD2 38 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **7a**. Notice the way we say *some*.

There's a cooker. There are some /səm/ chairs.

a John and Becky now live in the flat. Read their phone conversation. Fill in the gaps with some, any or a.

BECKY Hi. I'm at the supermarket. Have we got ¹ any bread?

JOHN Yes, we've got ² bread, but we haven't got

³ butter.

B OK. So we need butter. Is there milk?

J No, there isn't. And we need 6 ____ meat and 7 ____ eggs.

B Right. Have we got 8_____ fruit?

J We've got ⁹ big bag of oranges, but we haven't got ¹⁰ apples.

B OK, I'll get 11 more fruit. And 12 cheese

J And can you get ¹³ big bottle of water too?

B Yes, OK. See you later. Bye.

b CD2 39 Listen and check.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in two groups. Group A p106. Group B p111.

REAL WORLD

At the shops

Real World what sales assistants say; what customers say Vocabulary shops; things to buy

QUICK REVIEW Rooms and things in a house What's your favourite room in your home? Work in pairs. Tell your partner five things about your favourite room. Use There's a ..., There are some ..., There isn't a ..., There aren't any

I love shopping!

a Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Check in VOCABULARY 7.3 p142.

a bookshop a clothes shop a shoe shop a supermarket a klosk a newsagent's a department store a post office a bank a chemist's a butcher's a baker's

b Work in the same pairs. Think of two things you can buy or do in each place.

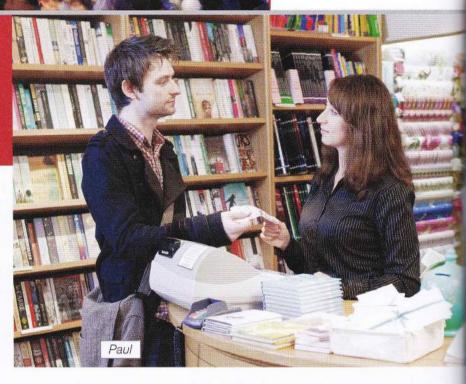
You can buy books and birthday cards in a bookshop.

- Work in groups. Discuss these guestions.
 - 1 Do you like shopping? Why?/Why not?
 - 2 What do you like or hate buying? Why?
 - 3 Which shops do you go to every week? What do you buy there?
 - 4 What's your favourite shop? Why?
- a Tick the words you know. Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 7.4 > p143.

stamps a map a suitcase tissues aspirin a lamp postcards a cake a guide book a newspaper cigarettes chocolate

b Work in new pairs. Think of two places where you can buy the things in **3a**.

You can buy stamps in a post office or a newsagent's.



Can I help you?

4 VIDEO 7 CD2 40 Look at the photos. Paul and Clare are at the shops. Watch or listen to their conversations. Answer these questions.

	Paul	Clare
1 Which shop is he/she in?		
2 What does he/she buy?		
3 How much does he/she spend?		

HELP WITH LISTENING What sales assistants say

a Read these things that sales assistants say. Check new words with your teacher.

CONVERSATION 1

- a Here's your change and your receipt.
- b Anything else?
- c Can I help you?
- d Yes, they're over there.
- e Would you like a bag?

CONVERSATION 2

- f Would you like anything else?
- g Your pin number, please.
- h That's £17.50, please.
- i Do you need any help?
- j They're on the second floor.
- **b** VIDEO 7 CD2 40 Watch or listen again. Put sentences a–j in 5a in the order you hear them (1–10).



REAL WORLD What customers say

a Fill in the gaps with the phrases in the boxes.

Have you got Do you sell I'll have Can I have

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT

Have you got any guide books for London?
four stamps for Europe, please?
suitcases?
this one, please.

your help that's all Here you How much is How much are

ASKING ABOUT PRICES

this map? these lamps?

OTHER USEFUL PHRASES

No, , thanks. are.

TIPS • We use one in place of a singular noun:

A Would you like a bag? B No, thanks. I've got one.

• We use ones in place of a plural noun:

A How much are these lamps? B The big ones are £25.

- b Check in REAL WORLD 7.2 p144.
- CD2 41 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 6a

Have you got any guide books for London?

a Clare is now on the second floor of the department store. Read the conversation and choose the correct words.

SALES ASSISTANT Do you ¹havelneed any help? CLARE Yes, please. I'd like to buy a suitcase.

- SA Yes, they're over 2theirlthere.
- C Oh, yes. How much 3islare they?
- SA The big ⁴onelones are £55 and the small ⁵onelones are £40.
- C OK. 61/1'll have this small 7onelones, please.
- SA Sure. 8Do/Would you like anything else?
- C No, that's 9everylall, thanks.
- SA OK, 10 that/that's £40, please.
- C 11 Here you are/Here are you.
- SA Thank you. Your ¹²pin number/number pin, please. Right, here's your suitcase and your ¹³change/receipt. Have a nice day.
- C You too. Bye.
- sa Goodbye.
- **b** Work in pairs. Practise the conversation. Take turns to be the sales assistant.
- a Work in new pairs. Write a conversation in a department store.
 - **b** Practise the conversation until you can remember it.
 - c Work in groups of four. Take turns to say your conversations. Listen to the other pair's conversation. What does the customer buy and how much does he/she spend?

VOCABULARY 7D AND SKILLS

What to wear

Vocabulary clothes; colours; plural nouns Skills reading: a magazine article

QUICK REVIEW Shops Write a list of shops. Work in pairs and compare lists. Who has more words? Tell your partner the last time you went to shops on your list. What did you buy there? I went to a supermarket two days ago. I bought

Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 7.5 > p143.

> trousers shorts ieans a dress a jacket a suit a skirt a jumper trainers a T-shirt a hat a tie boots socks a top a coat a cap

Match these words to colours 1-12.

black red vellow pink dark green light green brown örange purple



- a Write lists for you.
 - 1 clothes and colours I usually wear
 - 2 clothes and colours I sometimes wear
 - 3 clothes and colours I never wear
 - **b** Work in groups. Tell other students about the clothes and colours you wear.

I usually wear a suit in the week. I sometimes wear jeans.

I never wear pink.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Plural nouns

a Some nouns look plural, but they mean 'one thing'. Look at these examples.

Those jeans are nice. (= 1 thing) Where are my shoes? (= 2 things)

b Which of these nouns can mean 'one thing'? Which can be singular?

jeans shoes socks shorts boots trousers trainers

TIP . We can use a pair of ... with both types of plural noun: I've got a pair of red jeans/shoes.

5	a	Fill	in	the	gaps	with	some,	any	or	a
---	---	------	----	-----	------	------	-------	-----	----	---

1 I haven't got white shirts. black jeans.

Ineed new pair of trainers.

I haven't got blue suit.

I've got

I want to buy brown shoes.

I haven't got shorts.

I've got clothes that I never wear.

Which sentences are true for you? Compare with a partner.

a Before you read, check these phrases with your teacher.

> designer clothes fåshion magazines try on send back

b Read the article. Match paragraphs 1–3 to the people in the photos.

Me and my clothes

Do you think what you wear is important? We talked to three people from different countries to find out what they think about clothes, shopping, the internet - and, of course, shoes!

- I like looking good and I spend a lot of money on clothes and shoes. I'm a sales manager for a software company, so what I wear at work is important. I do a lot of shopping online because it's quick and easy. And if you don't like something, you can send it back. I buy a lot of shirts and I love designer clothes. They're expensive, but they look great. Yes, what I wear is important to me - and to my girlfriend!
- I don't like shopping for clothes and I don't think what people wear is very important. When I go shopping, I only buy the clothes I need and that's all. The last time I went clothes shopping was about two months ago. I bought a nice blue jumper and five pairs of socks! I usually wear the same thing every day - jeans, a T-shirt and trainers. And I really hate buying shoes - I've only got three pairs!
- 3 Oh, I really love clothes! I read all the fashion magazines and I watch programmes about clothes on TV. And I love buying shoes - I've got about fifty pairs at home! And I love shopping with my friends. We go into town every Saturday and look at all the new clothes. I never buy clothes online because you can't try them on before you buy them. Next weekend I want to buy a dress for a party - and some new shoes, of course!

a Read the article again. Fill in the gaps with Ronnie, Catherine or Samantha.

1	Samantha	has a lot of shoes.
2		doesn't buy clothes very often.
3		buys clothes to look good at work.
4		buys a lot of clothes online.
5	-	never buys clothes online.
6		doesn't have many pairs of shoes.
7		likes reading about clothes.
8		wears the same thing every day.
9		likes buying designer clothes.

- b Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 Which person from the article is similar to you? Why?
 - 2 Do you like shopping for clothes? Why?/Why not?
 - 3 What's your favourite clothes shop? What do you usually buy there?
 - 4 Do you buy clothes online? Why?/Why not?



HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

/ɔ:/ and /3:/

CD2 42 Listen to these sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/3:/ shorts walk four /3:/ shirt work girl

a Work in pairs. Look at the letters in bold. Write the words in the table.

Thursday strawberry tall word August birthday person bought divorced skirt

/ɔː/ shorts	/3:/ shirt
strawberry	Thursday

- **b** CD2 43 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- a Work in pairs. Look at the letters in bold in these words. Are the sounds the same (S) or different (D)?
 - daughter poor S
 boring furniture
 Turkish German
 morning always
 sport early
 dirty water
 tirst burger
 tall floor
 - b CD2 44 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

10 awful boring

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - Extra Practice 7 and Progress Portfolio 7 p121
 - Language Summary 7 p142
 - 7A-D Workbook p35

5 thirty surname

Self-study DVD-ROM 7 with Review Video



- Reading and Writing
 - Portfolio 7 Renting a flat Workbook p76
 Reading adverts for places to live
 Writing paragraphs (2); a letter to a friend

The meeting

Vocabulary work

Grammar Present Continuous: positive and negative, questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Clothes Write all the clothes you know. Work in pairs and compare lists. Then tell your partner about your favourite clothes: I've got a really nice black jacket. I bought it in Milan.

Vocabulary Work

a Work in pairs. Which of these words do you know? Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 8.1 p145.

a customer a report notes
a letter a message a contract
a company a meeting a conference

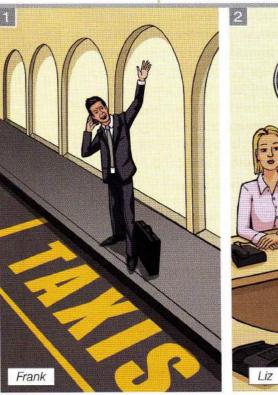
- **b** Work on your own. Which word/phrase does not go with the verb?
- 1 write a customer/a report/a letter
- 2 answer the phone/notes/an email
- 3 take contracts/messages/notes
- 4 sign a contract/a letter/a meeting
- 5 work for a company/in an office/a report
- 6 go to a meeting/a contract/a conference
- 7 write to a contract/a customer/a company
- Work in pairs. Compare answers. Then take turns to test your partner.

letters

You write letters and sign letters.

Listening and Speaking

- a Look at pictures 1 and 2. It's 9.50 a.m. Where are the people?
 - **b** CD2 45 Listen to the conversation. What is Frank's problem?
 - **c** Listen again and choose the correct answers.
 - 1 Frank isn't at work because the bus/train was late.
 - 2 The meeting with the Tamada brothers is at ten/eleven o'clock.
 - 3 Frank wants Janet to start the meeting/wait for him.
 - 4 The contract is Frank's/Janet's.
 - 5 Adriana is in the office/at home.
 - 6 Janet wants Liz to take notes in the meeting/ finish some reports.





- 3 a Who says these sentences Frank, Janet or Liz?
 - 1 I'm waiting for a taxi. Frank
 - 2 They're sitting in your office.
 - 3 They aren't looking very happy.
 - 4 She's working at home today.
 - 5 I'm not doing anything important at the moment.
 - 6 Danny isn't doing anything.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare answers.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Continuous: positive and negative

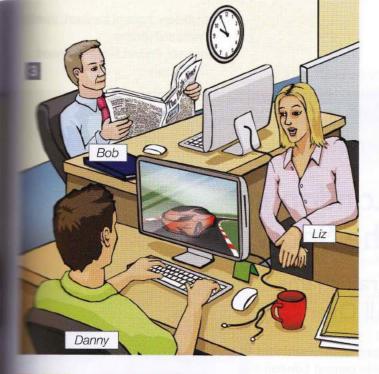
- Are the sentences in 3a about now or every day?
 - **b** We use be + verb+ing to make the Present Continuous. Fill in the gaps with 'm, 're, aren't, 's or isn't.

POSITIVE (+)		NEGATIVE (-)	
I		Inot	
you/we/theyverb+ing		you/we/they	verb+ing
he/she/it		he/she/it	

Write the -ing form of these verbs.

play *playing* make study sit look go run write live stop

d Check in GRAMMAR 8.1 > p146.



CD2 46 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **3a**. Copy the stress.

I'm waiting for a taxi.

5	a Look at picture 3. Liz is talking to Danny. It's
П	9.55 a.m. Put the verbs in the Present Continuous.

LIZ Danny, are you busy?

DANNY Well, er, I 1 'm writing (write) a letter.

LIZ Can you take notes at the meeting, please?

DANNY Why me? Look, Bob 2 (read)

the newspaper. Ask him.

LIZ He ³ (not read) the newspaper.

He ⁴ (study) the business pages.

DANNY Well, I ⁵ (wait) for a phone call from New York.

from New Tork.

They 6 (not work) in New York now,

Danny. It's 5.00 a.m. there!

DANNY OK, OK, I 7 (go) now. Which room?

b CD2 47 Listen and check your answers.

Work in pairs. It's 10.05 a.m. What are these people doing now, do you think?

1 Janet

3 Danny

2 The Tamada brothers

4 Frank

I think Janet's having a meeting.

CD2>48 It's now 10.15 a.m. Frank is phoning Liz. Listen and answer the questions.

- 1 Where is Frank calling from?
- 2 Is the taxi moving?
- 3 Are they having the meeting now?
- 4 What is Danny doing?
- 5 What is Frank doing at the end of the phone call?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Continuous: questions and short answers

a Write questions 3 and 4 from 8 in the table.

auxiliary	subject	verb+ing	
is	Frank	calling	from?
Is	the taxi	moving?	
	1	-	
	is	is Frank	is Frank calling

- **b** Write positive and negative short answers for these questions.
- 1 Am I working here today?

Yes, you are ./No.

2 Is Janet answering her phone?

3 Are they having the meeting now?

- c Check in GRAMMAR 8.2 > p146.
- 10 CD2 49 Who signs the contract, do you think Janet or Frank? Listen and check.
- a It's now 6.30 p.m. Frank is talking to his wife, Karen, on the phone. Make questions in the Present Continuous.

FRANK Hi! It's me.

KAREN Hello, love. ¹you / work / late this evening? Are you working late this evening?

FRANK No, I'm having a drink with Liz. I signed the Tamada contract today.

KAREN Oh, that's fantastic! 2you / have / a nice time ?

FRANK Yes, thanks. 3What / you / do?

KAREN I'm making dinner.

FRANK 4the kids / do / their homework?

KAREN Er ... no, they're not.

FRANK 5What / they / do?

KAREN They're watching TV.

b CD2 50 Listen and check.

c CD2 51 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise

the questions in 11a. Copy the stress.

Are you working late this evening?

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in two groups. Group A p107. Group B p112.

8B

It's snowing!

Vocabulary types of transport; travelling verbs and phrases Grammar Present Simple or Present Continuous

QUICK REVIEW Present Continuous Write six actions (play tennis, watch TV, etc.). Work in pairs. Take turns to mime the actions to your partner. He/She guesses what you are doing: A Are you playing tennis? B Yes, I am.

Vocabulary and Speaking

Types of transport

a Work in pairs. Which words do you know? Check new words in VOCABULARY 8.2 > p145.

> a taxi a car a plane a train a bus a bike a scooter a boat a motorbike a coach a ferry

- b Put the words into two groups: public transport and private transport. Some words can go in both groups.
- Work in pairs. Compare groups. Are they the same?
- 2 a Match phrases 1-7 to a-g. Check in VOCABULARY 8.3 > p145.
 - 1 go by car -
 - 2 go by bike
 - 3 go by plane
 - 4 go on foot
 - 5 go by bus/coach
 - 6 go by ferry/boat

 - 7 go by train/tube/ tram
- a cycle
- b take the bus/coach
- c walk
- d take the ferry/boat
- e fly
- drive
- q take the train/tube/ tram
- b Work in groups. Talk about how you travel:
- 1 to work/school/university
- 2 to the centre of your town/city
- 3 to other places in your country
- 4 to parties
- 5 when you're on holiday

Listening and Speaking

a Before you listen, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

> a normal day a traffic jam a journey snow

b Look at the news website and the photo. What is happening in London?

◆ C ↑ www.newsworld.com/London

| Washington | Washi



NewsWorld

London in the Snow

Traffic Jams All Over City

Heavy snow continues to fall in central London this morning as people try to get to work.

Travel news and updates



a CD2 52 Listen to a news report. Fill in the table.

	how he/she usually travels to work	how he/she is travelling to work today
first man	by train	
woman		
second man		

- b Listen again and answer these questions.
- 1 Are there any trains today?
- 2 What time does the first man usually start work?
- 3 How long is the woman's journey to work on a normal day?
- 4 When did she leave home?
- 5 Where is the second man from?
- 6 Do they have the same traffic problems in his country?

HELP WITH LISTENING Linking (2)

- Remember: we often link consonant sounds at the end of a word with vowel sounds at the beginning of the next word.
- a CD2 53 Listen and notice the linking.

YOU EXPECT TO HEAR

YOU USUALLY HEAR

I start at eight. And it's eight thirty now. I start at eight. And it's eight thirty now.

b Look at Audio Script CD2 52 p161. Listen again and notice the consonant-vowel links.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Simple or Present Continuous

a Look at this sentence. Then complete the rules with Present Simple or Present Continuous.

I usually go by train, but I'm taking the bus today.

- **b** Do we usually use the Present Simple (PS) or the Present Continuous (PC) with these words/phrases?

usually PS now today sometimes always often normally at the moment never hardly ever every day

c Check in GRAMMAR 8.3 > p146.

a Read what some other people are doing on the same day. Put the verbs in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

MADDY I'm an accountant and I

1 work (work) for a bank. I usually
2 (work) in the city, but
today I 3 (work) at home
because of the snow. At the moment
I 4 (sit) in the kitchen and
I 5 (write) emails on my
laptop. I 6 (not work)
at home very often, so I'm happy
it 7 (snow) today!



EVE On Mondays we usually 8 _____ (drive) to Wimbledon and 9 _____ (visit) some friends. But we 10 _____ (stay) at home today because of the snow. At the moment my husband, Lenny, 11 _____ (answer) his emails and I 12 _____ (watch) the news. Normally I 13 _____ (not watch) TV in the day, but I want to know about the weather.



- b CD2>54 Listen and check your answers.
- **a** Make questions about the people in **7a**. Fill in the gaps with *do*, *does*, *is*, *are* and the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1	What do	es Maddy do ?	(do)	
2		she	in the city today? (wo	ork)
3	What	she	at the moment	? (do)
4		she	at home very often?	(work)
5	What	Lenny and	d Eve usually	on Mondays? (do
6	What	they	today? (do)	
7		Eve normally	TV in the da	ay? (watch)
8	Why	she	it today? (watch)

- b CD2 55 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

What does Maddy do?

She's an accountant.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in two groups. Group A p107. Group B p112.

QUICK REVIEW Types of transport Write ten words for types of transport (car, bus, etc.). Work in pairs. Compare lists. Tell your partner which types of transport you used last week. Where did you go?

I'll get back to you

- Emily is at work. Look at A-C and answer the questions.
 - 1 What is Chris Morris's job?
 - 2 Where can you see Not Now?
 - 3 What is the postcode of Morris Computers?
 - 4 In which month is the conference?
 - 5 How many phone calls does Emily want to make?
 - 6 What is Chris Morris's email address?
 - 7 Who are the actors in Not Now?
 - 8 Is Clare a friend or a customer, do you think?

HELP WITH LISTENING

Phone messages

a Look at these sentences from phone messages. Work in pairs. Try to fill in the gaps with these words.

> voicemail person choose back message press

- a Hello, this is Alan Wick's voicemail .
- b If you leave a message, I'll get
- c I'm sorry, but the you called is not available.
- d Please leave your after the tone.
- e Please one of the following three options.
- f For all other enquiries,
- g Please
- b GD2 56 Listen to four messages. Check your answers to 2a. What do you do after each message?
- a end the call
- b leave a message
- c press a number on the phone
- 57 Emily is making three phone calls. Listen and answer these questions.
 - 1 When does Emily want to:
 - a meet Alan Wick?
 - b meet Clare?
 - c go to the theatre?
 - 2 How much are the theatre tickets?



Bill Marks and Kelly Bolton

S BEST COMEDY!"

The Evening News

The Queen's Theatre, Manchester

Box Office: 08081 570570

www.queenstheatremanchester.com





Can I call you back?

- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 How many phone calls do you make or get on a normal day?
 - 2 Do you always answer your phone at work or at home? If not, why not?
 - 3 When was the last phone call you made? Who did you call? Why?
- a VIDEO 8 CD2 58 Close your book. Watch or listen to two phone calls. What does Emily talk to Clare about? When can Emily talk to Chris Morris again?
 - **b** Work in pairs. Choose the correct words/phrases.

TIM Hello, 3DUK. Can I help you?

CLARE Hello, ¹I want tol(can I) speak to Emily, please?

TIM ²Hold on/Stop a moment, she's here.

EMILY Hello. Emily Wise.

CLARE Hi. 3It's/I'm Clare. I 4got/had your message.

EMILY Good. Do you want to go for a coffee after work?

CLARE Sure. Is six o'clock OK?

EMILY Yes, that's fine. Let's meet at Café Uno.

CLARE OK. See you there at six. Bye.

EMILY Bye.

CHRIS Hello?

EMILY Hello, 5 is thatlare you Chris Morris?

CHRIS ⁶Speaking./I am.

EMILY ⁷This is/I'm Emily Wise from 3DUK.

CHRIS Hello, Emily. Look, I've got a conference call in a minute. Can I call you *backlagain in an hour?

EMILY Of course. Call me 9 on/by my mobile.

CHRIS Right. 10 I'll call/I'm calling you later.

EMILY Thanks a lot. Bye.

CHRIS Bye.

c Watch or listen again. Check your answers.

Close your books. Work in pairs. What can you remember about the two conversations?

REAL WORLD Talking on the phone

Write these headings in a-d in the table.

ether useful phrases calling people back saying who you are asking to speak to people

a	b		
Hello, can I speak to (Emily), please?	This is (Emily Wise) from (3DUK).		
Hello, is that (Chris Morris)?	Speaking.		
	It's (Clare).		
C	d other useful phrases		
Can I call you back (in an hour)?	I got your message.		
I'll call you later.	Call me on my mobile.		
Can you call me back?	Hold on a moment.		

REAL WORLD 8.1 > p146

- 8 CD2 59 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 7. Copy the stress and intonation. Hellő, can I speak to Émily, please?
- a Clare is making some phone calls. Fill in the gaps with parts of the phrases from 7.

CLARE Hello, 1 is that Simon Dale?

SIMON Speaking.

CLARE Hi, Simon. 2 Clare Ross.

SIMON Oh, hello, Clare. Look, I can't talk right now.

you back?

CLARE Yes, of course. 4 my mobile.

SIMON Right. I'll 5 later. Bye.

CLARE Hi, Vicky. 6 Clare.

VICKY Hi, Clare. How are you?

CLARE I'm fine, thanks. 7 to Rob, please?

VICKY 8 a moment, I'll get him.

ROB Hello, Clare. I 9 your message.

Let's meet at 8.30 outside the cinema.

CLARE OK, see you then. Bye.

- b Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- a Work in new pairs. Write a phone conversation.
 - **b** Swap conversations with another pair. Correct any mistakes.
 - Practise the new conversation with your partner. Then role-play it for the other pair.

VOCABULARY 8D AND SKILLS

Life outdoors

Vocabulary indoor and outdoor activities; adjectives and adverbs Skills reading: an advert, a formal letter

QUICK REVIEW Talking on the phone

Write all the phrases for talking on the phone you can remember. Work in pairs. Take turns to say your phrases. How many are the same?

a Tick the words/phrases you know. Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 8.4 p145.

> swim ski windsurf sing cook drive speak another långuage ride a horse ride a motorbike play a musical instrument

b Work in pairs. Find four things that you can do, but your partner can't do. Use the words/ phrases in 1a or your own ideas.

Can you swim?

Yes, I can./No, I can't.

Read the job advert. Would you like to do this job? Why?/Why not?

South Wales Adventure Centre

Course Leaders

We are looking for people to work as course leaders at our outdoor centre in Pembrokeshire, Wales, We offer holidays and weekend courses for adults and teenagers (including school groups from Europe).

We are looking for people who:

- like working with people of all ages
- can ride and enjoy working with horses
- enjoy outdoor activities
 are good at languages
- are good at water sports
 have a driving licence













Email welshadventure@iol.co.uk for an application form. Experience and references required.

 Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

> excellent popular fluent work hard careful

- b Read the reference letter. Do you think Ray is a good person for the job?
- c Read the reference and advert again. Find five reasons why Ray can do the job.



Devon Outdoor Centre

Woodside | Devon | PL3 1GZ

Tel: 01541 766902 email: d.outdoor@gomail.co.uk

23rd March

Dear Sir or Madam

Reference: Mr Ray Downing

I am writing to recommend Ray for the position of course leader with your company. He worked for our outdoor centre for four months last summer. He was a very popular course leader and he planned all his group's activities very carefully. He always worked very hard and made friends easily with people of all ages.

Ray loves all outdoor activities, particularly cycling and horse riding. He can sail very well and he's a good surfer and a fast swimmer. He speaks Spanish fluently and is an excellent driver. Ray also wrote a wonderful blog for the teenagers' course and all the children's parents really enjoyed reading it.

If you would like any further information, please contact me by phone or email.

Yours faithfully

Stella James Centre Manager

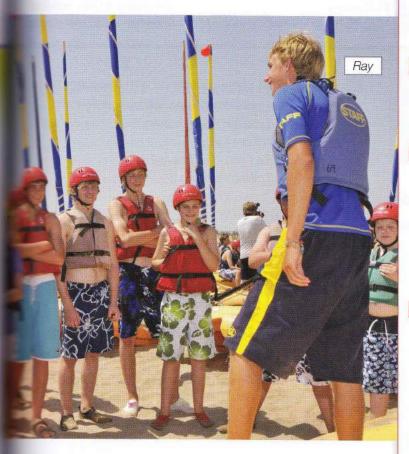
Н	FI	P	WITH	VOCABI	II ARY	Adjectives	and	adverbs
	-	-	AASSIS	MOCHO	JEMMI	Mujectives	allu	auveins

a Look at this sentence. Then complete the rules with adverbs or adjectives.

adverb adjective

He speaks Spanish fluently and is an excellent driver.

- We use to describe nouns. They usually come before the noun.
- We use like well, carefully, etc. to describe verbs. They usually come after the verb.
- b Look at the words in bold in the letter. Which are adverbs and which are adjectives? Which verbs or nouns do they describe?
- c Write the adverbs for these adjectives. What are the spelling rules? Which adverb is irregular?
- 1 fluent
- 2 easy
- 3 careful
- 4 good
- d Check in VOCABULARY 8.5 > p145. Learn the irregular adverbs.



Write the adverbs.

1safe safely4slow7quiet2happy5beautiful8bad3fast6hard9noisy

a Choose the correct words.

- 1 I'm a good/well tennis player.
- 2 I usually sleep quite bad/badly.
- 3 I work very hard/hardly.
- 4 I'm a bad/badly driver.
- 5 I speak more than one language fluent/fluently.
- 6 I'm a very well/good cook.
- 7 I can sing beautiful/beautifully.
- **b** Tick the true sentences. Change the other sentences to make them true for you.

I'm not a very good tennis player. I usually sleep very well.

- **c** Work in pairs and compare sentences. How many are the same?
- a Choose three adjectives or adverbs from 4c or 5.
 Write a sentence about you for each word. Give the sentences to your teacher.
 - **b** Listen to your teacher read sentences about different students. Can you guess who he/she is talking about?

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

/1/ and /i:/

- 60 Listen to these sounds and words. Listen again and practise.
 - 1 /I/ live fish biscuits
 - 2 /i:/ leave week people
- a Work in pairs. Match the vowels in bold in these words with sounds 1 or 2 in 1.

milk 1 teeth his he's ill ski beach meeting excited thirteen window interesting machine chicken

- **b** CD2 61 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- a Work in new pairs. Look at the vowels in bold.
 Which vowel sound is different?
 - 1 beach machine (window)
 - 2 engineer assistant teacher
 - 3 market building three
 - 4 cheese sausage meat
 - 5 busy message email
 - 6 terrible crowded clean
 - 7 English Chinese Brazilian
 - **b** CD2 62 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - Extra Practice 8 and Progress Portfolio 8 p122
 - Language Summary 8 p145
 - 8A-D Workbook p40
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 8 with Review Video



- Reading and Writing
 - Portfolio 8 Finding a job Workbook p78
 Reading job adverts
 Writing a formal letter

QUICK REVIEW Adjectives and adverbs Write six adjectives. Work in pairs. Take turns to say your adjectives. Your partner says the adverb and a sentence with that adverb: A fluent B fluently. My sister can speak Russian fluently.

Vocabulary and Speaking Holiday activities

a Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps with these verbs. Then check new words/phrases in VOCABULARY 9.1 > p147.



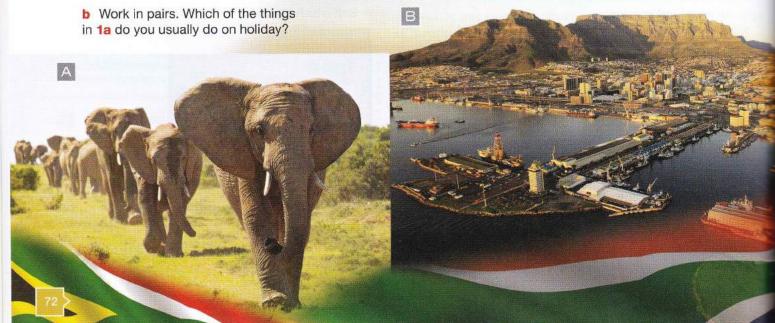
- 2 a Make Past Simple questions with these words.
 - 1 did / last / you / When / on / holiday / go ? When did you last go on holiday?
 - 2 did / go / Where / you?
 - 3 a good time / you / Did / have ?
 - 4 with / you / Who / go / did?
 - 5 do / did / there / What / you?
 - 6 did / stay / you / Where ?
 - 7 you / travel / did / around / How?
 - 8 you / What else / do / did ?
 - **b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Give more information if possible.

Listening and Speaking

- a What do you know about Cape Town?
 - **b** Before you listen, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

a tourist a cable car a wildlife park an elephant a prison a cell a whale

- c CD3 1 Jessica is asking her friend Andy about his last holiday. Listen and put photos A–D in order.
- d Listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?
- 1 Andy went to Cape Town for three weeks.
- 2 He went there with a friend from university.
- 3 They walked up Table Mountain.
- 4 They stayed in a hotel in Cape Town.
- 5 They rented a car for the first week.
- 6 They went on a boat trip on the last day of their holiday



HELP WITH LISTENING Weak forms: review

- Remember: we often say words like was, you, of, etc.
 with a schwa /ə/. These are called weak forms.
- a Work in pairs. Look at these sentences. Underline the words you hear as weak forms.
 - 1 I went to Cape Town for two weeks.
 - 2 Nigel, a friend from university.
 - 3 And where did you stay?
 - 4 I took lots of photos.
 - 5 Yes, it was amazing.
 - b CDS 2 Listen and check.
 - c Look at Audio Script CD3 1 p162. Listen again and notice the weak forms of the words in pink.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Infinitive of purpose

- a Look at sentences 1 and 2. Do they have the same meaning?
 - 1 We drove to a wildlife park to see some elephants.
 - 2 We drove to a wildlife park because we wanted to see some elephants.
 - b Choose the correct words in the rule.
 - To say why we do something, we often use the infinitive/infinitive with to.

TIP • We often answer Why ... ? questions with the infinitive with to: A Why did you go there? B To see some elephants.







- 6 CD3 3 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

 to see some elephants →

 We drove to a wildlife park to see some elephants.
- a Make sentences about why tourists go to these places. Use these verbs.

see stay take learn see go (x2)

Tourists go to:

- Nevada / the Grand Canyon Tourists go to Nevada to see the Grand Canyon.
- 2 Hawaii / diving
- 3 Dubai / in amazing hotels
- 4 Agra / the Taj Mahal
- 5 Switzerland / skiing
- 6 Kenya / photos of animals
- 7 London / English
- **b** Work in pairs. Ask your partner why tourists go to the places in **7a**.

Why do tourists go to Nevada?

To see the Grand Canyon.

- a Complete these sentences. Use the infinitive with to and your own ideas. Write true sentences if possible.
 - 1 I need some money ...
 - 2 I often go online ...
 - 3 I'm studying English ...
 - 4 Last weekend I went into town ...
 - 5 Last night I phoned my friend ...
 - 6 Yesterday I went to the supermarket ...
 - **b** Work in pairs. Take turns to say your sentences. Ask follow-up questions if possible.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Write four places you went to in the last four weeks (cities, countries, places, shops, etc.). Think why you went there.

Rome France my parents' house the post office

a Work in pairs. Ask why your partner went to the places on his/her list. Ask follow-up questions.

Why did you go to Rome?

To visit my sister.

When did you go there?

A week ago.

b Tell the class about one place your partner went to.

A week ago Reza went to Rome to visit his sister.

QUICK REVIEW Adjectives Work in pairs. Write six adjectives that can describe places (crowded, safe, etc.). Take turns to say sentences about places you know. Use the adjectives on your list: The town centre is very crowded on Saturdays.

Vocabulary and Speaking Natural places

a Tick the words you know. Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 9.2 > p147.

the countryside a mountain a hill a forest a wood a river an island a lake the sea the desert

- b Think of three famous natural places in your country. Use vocabulary from 1a and your own ideas.
- Work in groups. Tell other students about the natural places you chose.

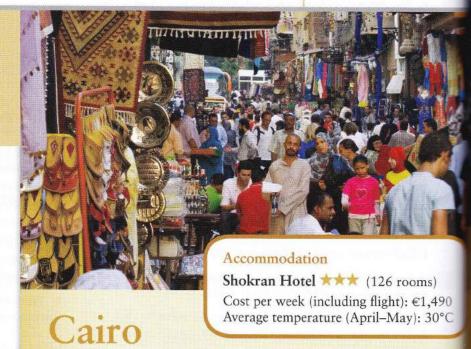
There's a beautiful lake in Hungary called Lake Balaton.

Reading

a Before you read, check these words/phrases with your teacher.

the Pyramids a mosque go snorkelling a coral reef a camel

- **b** Read a holiday brochure about two holiday places in Egypt. Choose one place for a holiday. Tell another student why you chose it.
- c Read about the places again. Find three things you can do in each place.
- Read these sentences. Which sentence is false?
 - a The Sels Hotel is smaller than the Shokran Hotel.
 - b Cairo is hotter than Sharm El Sheikh.
 - c Cairo is probably noisier.
 - d Cairo is more crowded than Sharm El Sheikh.
 - e The holiday in Cairo is more expensive.



Egypt's busy capital city is a wonderful place to visit. Most people come to Cairo to see the Pyramids at Giza and the famous Egyptian Museum. You can also go on a guided tour of Old Cairo to see the beautiful mosques and old buildings, or go shopping in the famous Khan al-Khalili market.

In the evening you can enjoy traditional Egyptian food in restaurants all over the city, or you can go on a boat trip and have dinner on the River Nile. Come to Cairo – and have the holiday of a lifetime!



HELP WITH GRAMMAR Comparatives

- a Look at the comparatives in bold in 3. Then complete the rules.
 - Most 1-syllable adjectives (small, old) → add -er .
 - 1-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant (hot, big, etc.) → double the last consonant and add _____.
 - 2-syllable adjectives ending in -y (noisy, happy, etc.) → change the -y to _____ and add _____.
 - Other 2- and 3-syllable adjectives (crowded, expensive, etc.) → put ______ before the adjective.
 - The comparatives for good and bad are irregular: good → better, bad → worse.
 - **b** Look at sentences a, b and d in 3. Which word do we often use after the comparative?
 - c Check in GRAMMAR 9.2 > p148.



Sharm El Sheikh

People come to Sharm El Sheikh from all over the world to go diving and snorkelling in the Red Sea – the beautiful coral reefs and colourful fish are amazing! You can also rent a motorbike and go into the desert to see the red mountains, or maybe go on a camel ride instead. And at the end of the day you can enjoy fresh seafood in one of Sharm El Sheikh's excellent restaurants and then go clubbing with your friends. Whatever you want from your holiday, it's here in Sharm El Sheikh!

Accommodation

Sels Hotel ★★★★ (39 rooms)

Cost per week (including flight): €1,670 Average temperature (April–May): 26°C



Write the comparatives.

1 safe safer4 big7 dangerous10 easy2 clean5 dirty8 fast11 difficult3 boring6 good9 bad12 lucky

Listening and Speaking

- **a** CD3 4 Listen to Patrick and Juliet planning a holiday in Egypt. Where does each person want to go? Find one reason why they want to go there.
 - **b** Fill in the gaps with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets. Use *than* if necessary.
 - 1 Sharm's more beautiful than Cairo. (beautiful)
 - 2 Cairo's . (interesting)
 - 3 Sharm looks Cairo. (nice)
 - 4 Cairo's Sharm. (busy)
 - 5 The hotel in Cairo is . (cheap)
 - 6 Cairo's _____ Sharm. (good)
 - 7 Sharm's probably ... (safe)
 - 8 Sharm's _____ with young people. (popular)
 - c Work in pairs. Compare sentences. Who says each sentence in 6b – Patrick or Juliet?
 - d Listen again and check.
- 7 CD3 5 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **6b**. Copy the stress and weak form of *than*.

Sharm's more beautiful than /ðən/ Cairo.

8 CD3 6 Where do you think Patrick and Juliet went on holiday? Listen and check.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Write five sentences comparing two friends or two people in your family. Use these words/phrases or your own ideas.

young old beautiful tall short friendly happy busy rich famous popular a good/boring/interesting job a big/small/nice house a difficult/easy/busy/interesting life

Carlos is younger than Diego.
Diego's got a more interesting job.

a Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the people you chose in 9. Give more information if possible.

Carlos is younger than Diego. Carlos is 27 and Diego is 30.

b Tell the class two things about the people your partner chose.

QUICK REVIEW Natural places Write all the words for natural places that you know (a mountain, etc.). Work in pairs. Compare lists. Then tell your partner about the last time you went to two of the places on your list.

Two places to go

a Work in pairs. Which of these animals do you know? Then do the exercise in vocabulary 9.3 > p147.

> a lion a chicken a tiger a cow a monkey a sheep a wolf a rabbit a mouse a snake a bird a gorilla

- **b** Put the animals from **1a** into these groups. Some animals can go in more than one group.
- 1 wild animals
- 2 farm animals
- 3 pets
- Work in pairs. Compare groups. Are they the same?
- **d** Work in the same pairs. Which other animals do you know? Add them to your groups.
- a Read about two places in the UK where people go for a day out. Which place is more interesting, do you think? Why?
 - b Read the articles again. Answer the questions.

LONGLEAT

- 1 How do you travel around the Safari Park?
- 2 Which animals can you see there?
- 3 Can you visit Longleat House?
- 4 Where does the gorilla live?

REGENT'S PARK

- 5 When did London Zoo first open?
- 6 Is the theatre open in October?
- 7 How many places to eat are there in the park?
- 8 Where can you hire boats from?
- Work in pairs. Compare answers.



LONGLEAT

Longleat is a fantastic day out for all the family. You can drive around the Safari Park and see hundreds of animals in the wild. There are monkeys, wolves, lions and tigers in the park, so don't forget to close your car windows!

You can also go on a guided tour of Longleat House, built in the 16th century, or just have lunch in the beautiful gardens. And then in the afternoon you can go on an exciting safari boat trip – look out for the gorilla that lives on an island in the middle of the lake!

Longleat is open every day from February to November. You can buy tickets online at www.longleat.co.uk.

What would you like to do?

- a VIDEO 9 CD3 7 Watch or listen to the Wilson family planning a day out. Put the places they talk about in order. Where do they decide to go?
 - a Longleat
- c a theatre
- e London Zoo

- **b** Regent's Park
- d the beach 1
- f school
- **b** Listen again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?
- 1 The Wilson family went to the beach last weekend.
- 2 Josh's parents want to go to Regent's Park.
- 3 Josh's sister works at a restaurant every weekend.
- 4 Josh doesn't want to go to Longleat.
- 5 His friends went to Longleat two weeks ago.
- 6 He went to London Zoo last year.
- 7 He can't take a friend with him on Saturday.



LONDON ZOO

This world-famous zoo first opened in 1828 and is now home to 12,000 animals. You can see tigers, camels, snakes, colourful birds and lots more – and don't forget to visit the exciting rainforest area. For more information, go to www.zsl.org.

THE OPEN AIR THEATRE

The theatre is open from May to September. One of the plays this season is Shakespeare's A Midsummer Night's Dream. You can book tickets at www.openairtheatre.org.

EVENTS IN THE PARK

There are sometimes free concerts in the afternoons and guided bird walks at the weekend. See www.royalparks.gov.uk for more details of what's on this week.

FOOD AND DRINK

There are six excellent cafés and restaurants in Regent's Park. The Boathouse Café is a popular place for lunch, and the Garden Café is a great place for a meal before going to the open air theatre.

BOAT HIRE

You can hire boats on the lake from March to October from the Boathouse Café.



REAL WORLD Deciding what to do

a Look at these questions and answers. We use them when we'redeciding what to do.

asking people what they want to do	saying what you want to do	
What would you like to do?	I'd like (to go to the beach).	
Where do you want to go?	I want (to go to Longleat).	
Would you like (to go to London)?	Yes, that's a good idea.	
Do you want (to go to Regent's Park)?	Not really. I'd rather (stay at home)	

TIPS • Would like is more polite than want.

- We use I'd rather to say I want to do this more than something else.
- b Complete the rules with would/'d like, want and would/'d rather.
- After _____ we use the infinitive (go, do, etc.).
 After _____ and ____ we use the infinitive with to (to go, to do, etc.).

REAL WORLD 9.1 > p148

5 CD3 8 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 4a. Copy the stress.

What would you /wudʒə/ like to do? I'd /aɪd/ like to go to the beach.

a Work in pairs, A and B. Take turns to ask your partner what he/she would like to do.

Would you like to go to the cinema?

I'd rather watch a DVD.

- 1 A go to the cinema? B watch a DVD
- 2 B go for a walk? A
- 3 A play tennis? B go swimming
- 4 B watch TV? A go out
- A go shopping? B
- 6 B go out for a meal? A go out for a drink
- b Take turns to make and respond to three more suggestions.
- a Choose a place near where you are now for a day out. Think of three reasons why you want to go there.
 - **b** Work in groups of three. Decide what to do for your day out. Talk about these things.

which place when to go what you can do there where and when to meet how to get there

Where would you like to go?

I'd like to go to ...

I'd rather go to ...

c Tell the class about your group's day out.

VOCABULARY PD AND SKILLS

Time for a change

Vocabulary verb patterns (*like* doing, would like to do, etc.)

Skills reading: a magazine article

QUICK REVIEW Comparatives Write eight adjectives. Work in pairs. Take turns to say your adjectives. Your partner says a sentence using the comparative form: A Tall. B My sister is taller than me.

- Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 Do you live in a city or in the country?
 - 2 Do you like where you live? Why?/Why not?
 - 3 Would you like to move house? If yes, where to? Why?
- Work in the same groups. Which of these sentences do you agree with? Give reasons if possible.
 - 1 People have an easier life in the country.
 - 2 It's more difficult to find jobs in the country.
 - 3 It's cheaper to live in the country than the city.
 - 4 Public transport is better in the city.
 - 5 Life in the city is more interesting.
 - 6 The city is more dangerous for young people.

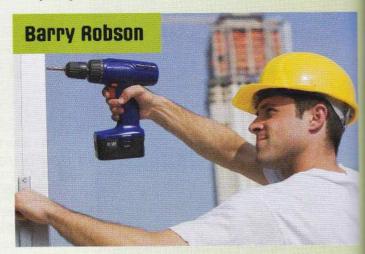
- a Work in pairs. Look at the photos of the people. Who agrees with the sentences in 2, do you think Neil or Barry?
 - b Read the article and check your answers.
- a Read the article again and answer the questions.
 - 1 When did the Price family decide to move house?
 - 2 Why does Neil want to move to the country?
 - 3 How often does Neil see his children?
 - 4 Do all the Price family want to move to the country?
 - 5 Was it easy for Barry to find a job in the city?
 - 6 Has he got a car?
 - 7 Does he sleep well, do you think?
 - 8 Where does he want to live in the future?
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare answers.

The Grass Is Always Greener

They say that the grass is always greener on the other side of the fence. But can moving house really solve your problems? We asked two people from different parts of the UK why they decided to change the way they live.



A month ago I got a job as a National Park manager, so we decided to sell our house in the city and move to the country. We want to have an easier life and I'd like to spend more time with my family. I really enjoy spending time with my two children, but I only see them on Sundays at the moment. I work six days a week because you need to have a lot of money to live in the city. Everything's more expensive here, especially if you have children. But the kids aren't very happy about moving. They love living in the city, but my wife and I think the country is safer for them. Of course, teenagers like going out on their own, but it can be quite dangerous around here, especially at night.



I moved to the city two years ago because I needed to get a job. I stopped looking for work in the country because there weren't any jobs, but when I moved here I found one in the first week. I enjoy living in the city because there are more things to do in your free time – life in the country can be quite boring. Also public transport is a lot better in the city, so I don't need to have a car. But houses are more expensive, so generally the cost of living is about the same. Sometimes I hate living in the city – it's dirty, crowded and noisy at night – and I'd like to go back to the country one day. When I'm old, I'd love to have a little place in the mountains where it's really quiet.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Verb patterns (like doing, would like to do, etc.)

a Look at these sentences. What verb form comes after like? What verb form comes after 'd like?

Teenagers like **going** out on their own.

I'd like to go back to the country one day.

b Find these verbs in the article. What verb form comes after them? Write the verbs in the table.

decide want enjoy need love stop hate would/'d love

+ infinitive with to
would/'d like

- c Check in VOCABULARY 9.4 > p148.
- a Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verb in brackets.
 - 1 I like <u>reading</u> fashion magazines. (read)
 - 2 My sister hates _____ early. (get up)
 - 3 I want _____ some new clothes. (buy)
 - 4 My son loves video games. (play)
 - 5 I need a new job. (find)
 - 6 I'd like ______ this evening. (go out)
 - 7 Last night Tim decided _____ his job. (leave)
 - 8 I'd love _____ to Australia. (go)
 - 9 My parents enjoy _____ new places. (visit)
 - 10 I stopped _____ three years ago. (smoke)
 - b Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- a Fill in the gaps with the correct form of these verbs.

live watch be go to travel buy

1 I'd like to live in the USA.
2 I like by train.
3 I like the cinema.
4 I'd like a new computer.
5 I like football on TV.
6 I'd like famous!

b Make questions with *you* from the sentences in **7a**. Then write two more questions, one with *like* and one with *would like*.

Would you like to live in the USA?

c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Give reasons if possible.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

Silent letters

a CD3 9 In some words we don't pronounce every letter. Listen to these words. Notice the silent letters in brackets ().

lis(t)en cam(e)ra dau(gh)ter su(i)tcase int(e)resting si(gh)tseeing (k)now gran(d)father choc(o)late fru(i)t

- b Listen again and practise.
- a Put brackets () round the silent letters in these words.

1 (w)rite

7 sandwich

2 island

8 hour

3 friend

9 bread

4 vegetables

10 different

5 building

11 white

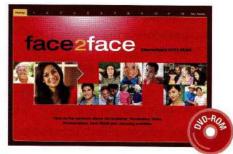
6 two

12 half

- b Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- c CD3 10 Listen and practise the words.
- a CD3 11 Listen and write the words. Be careful of the silent letters!
 - 1 wrote
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare your spelling. Put brackets () round the silent letter in each word.
 - c Check your spelling in Audio Script CD3 11 p163.

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - **Extra Practice 9 and Progress Portfolio 9 p123**
 - Language Summary 9 p147
 - 9A-D Workbook p45
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 9 with Review Video



- Reading and Writing
 - Portfolio 9 Places to go Workbook p80 Reading tourist information Writing describing places: paragraphs (3); phrases with and without the

Stay fit and healthy

Vocabulary verb phrases; frequency expressions

Grammar imperatives; should/shouldn't

QUICK REVIEW: Verb patterns Work in pairs. Take turns to say something that you: love doing, would like to do tomorrow, enjoy doing at the weekend, need to do soon, hate doing, would love to do in the future. Continue the conversations if possible.

Vocabulary and Speaking Verb phrases

a Work in pairs. Match the verbs in A to the words/phrases in B. Check new words/phrases in VOCABULARY 10.1 p149.

getspend carry wash	B the windows/the car fit/stressed time/money the shopping/the bags
take have do get on/off	a bath/a shower a bus/a train the lift/the escalator the housework/some exercise

b Work in pairs. Take turns to test your partner.



- a Write the name of one person you know who:
 - walks to work
- watches TV a lot
- does a lot of sport
- gets stressed easily
- **b** Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the people in **2a**. Ask follow-up questions.

Reading and Speaking

a Before you read, check these words with your teacher.

a member a survey a calorie a mile healthy

- **b** Read the first paragraph of the article. Then choose the best headline.
- Cheaper Gym Membership For All
- Get Fit For Free
- City People Don't Exercise
- c Read the rest of the article. Match tips 1–8 to pictures a–h.
- d Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
- 1 Which do you think is the best tip? Why?
- 2 Do you do any of these things now? If so, which ones?
- 3 Which would you like to do in the future?

Everyone wants to look good and get fit, so many of us go to a gym. In the UK there are over 6,000 gyms and 7 million gym members. That's a lot of exercise — or is it? A typical gym member spends £372 a year, but people spend £200 million every year on gym membership they don't use. So here are our top tips for getting fit without spending any money.

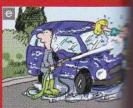
- 1 Walk up and down stairs. Don't take lifts. If there aren't any stairs and there's an escalator, walk up or down the escalator. Walking up an escalator uses ten calories, walking down uses four.
- 2 Get off the bus one stop earlier. You use about 80 calories for every mile you walk.
- 3 Walk around when you are talking on the phone. You use six calories **every minute**.
- 4 Wash the car. Don't use a car wash. Washing the car for 30 minutes uses 100 calories.
- 5 Do the housework faster than normal. You use four extra calories every minute.
- 6 Don't drive to the supermarket once a week. Walk to the shops three times a week and carry your shopping home. This can use 100 calories every mile.
- 7 Don't have a bath, have a shower instead. It saves water and you use one more calorie every three minutes.
- 8 Go for a run **twice a week**. You can use 150–200 calories a mile – and it's a lot cheaper than a gym!

















HELP WITH GRAMMAR Imperatives

- We often use imperatives to give strong advice.
 Look at these sentences and answer the questions.

 Walk up and down stairs. Don't take lifts.
 - 1 Is the positive imperative the same as the infinitive?
 - 2 How do we make the negative imperative?

GRAMMAR 10.1 > p150

- a Write five more tips on how to stay fit and healthy.

 Don't watch TV every night. Eat a lot of fruit.
 - **b** Work in groups. Compare sentences and choose your top five tips. Then tell the class what they are.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY

Frequency expressions

Look at the frequency expressions in bold in the article. Then fill in the gaps.

once	a day a		day
three times		every	week
four times	a year		month year

TIP • We use How often ... ? to ask about frequency: A How often do you go to the gym? B Twice a week.

VOCABULARY 10.2 > p149

- a Underline all the frequency expressions in the article. Then compare answers in pairs.
 - **b** Work in the same pairs. Ask your partner how often he/she does these things.
 - 1 go for a walk?
- 4 get very stressed?
- 2 go swimming?
- 5 eat vegetables?
- 3 have a holiday?
- 6 eat fish?

How often do you go for a walk?

Oh, about once a week.

Listening

- a CD3 12 Look at the photo. Mrs Lee is at the doctor's. Listen to their conversation. Is she fit and healthy? Why?/Why not?
 - b Listen again and answer the questions.
 - 1 How much does Mrs Lee weigh? Seventy kilos.
 - 2 How often does she walk to school with the children?
 - 3 When did she start going to the gym?
 - 4 How often does she go to the gym?
 - 5 What does she usually eat?
 - 6 What advice did the doctor give her?



HELP WITH GRAMMAR should/shouldn't

We use should and shouldn't to give advice. Look at these sentences and choose the correct words in the rules.

You **should** do some exercise three times a week. You **shouldn't** eat so many pizzas and biscuits.

- We use should to say something is a good/bad thing to do.
- We use shouldn't to say something is a good/bad thing to do.
- After should and shouldn't we use the infinitive/ infinitive with to.

GRAMMAR 10.2 > p150

a The doctor gave Mrs Lee some more advice. Fill in the gaps with should or shouldn't.

1	You	go swimming every week.
2	You	eat big meals in the evening.
3	You	eat more salads.
4	You	drive to work every day.
5	You	walk to work twice a week.
6	You	sit and watch TV every evening.

b CD3 13 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Then listen again and practise. Copy the stress.

You should go swimming every week.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in groups of three. Student A p108. Student B p113. Student C p114.

QUICK REVIEW should/shouldn't; clothes Write all the clothes you know. Work in pairs and compare lists. What clothes do you think people should and shouldn't wear when they go to: a wedding, a job interview, a birthday party?

Vocabulary and Speaking

Appearance

- **a** Look at photos A–D for one minute. Remember the people and their clothes!
 - **b** Work in pairs. Close your book. What are the people wearing?
- a Work in new pairs. Which of these words/phrases do you know? Check new words in VOCABULARY 10.3 p149.

A
young middle-aged old
tall short
thin slim fat overweight
beautiful good-looking attractive
white black Asian
bald

B
blue/brown/green eyes
long/short hair
dark/fair/blonde/grey hair
a beard a moustache

- **b** Which group of words do we use with have got? Which do we use with be?
- a Write a description of one person in photos A–D. Don't write his/her name.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Read your partner's description. Who is it? Is the description correct?

Listening

- a CD3 14 Leo and Tina want someone to advertise Break, a new chocolate bar. Listen and put the people they talk about in order.
 - **b** Listen again. How do Leo and Tina describe each person? Make notes.
 - **c** Work in pairs. Compare your answers. Who do Leo and Tina choose for the *Break* poster, do you think? Why?
 - d GD3 15 Listen to the end of the conversation. Who did they choose? Why?

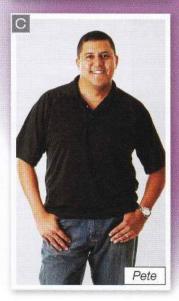
Vocabulary and Speaking

Character

- a Tick the sentences that are true for you.
 - 1 I work very hard.
 - 2 I don't like working.
 - 3 I like doing things to help other people.
 - 4 I make people laugh a lot.
 - 5 I usually think about myself, not other people.
 - 6 I'm friendly and I like meeting new people.
 - 7 When I promise to do something, I always do it.
 - 8 It's difficult for me to talk to new people.
 - 9 I like giving people money and presents.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Compare your answers. How many are the same?









a Match these adjectives to the sentences in 5a.
Check in VOCABULARY 10.4 p.149.

hard-working 1 generous kind funny selfish outgoing lazy reliable shy

b Work in groups. Use the adjectives in **6a** to describe members of your family.

Listening and Speaking

- Match 1–3 to a–c. Who is Leo's new girlfriend?
 - 1 What's she like?
 - 2 What does she like doing?
 - 3 What does she look like?
 - a She's tall and slim, and she's got long dark hair.
 - b She likes clubbing and going to restaurants.
 - c She's friendly and outgoing. And she's very beautiful.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Questions with like

- Complete the rules with questions 1-3 in 7.
 - We use _____ to ask for a general description.
 The answer can include character and physical appearance.
 - We use ______ to ask about physical appearance only.
 - We use _____ to ask what people enjoy doing in their free time.

TIP • How is he/she? asks about health, not personality: A How's your mum? B She's fine, thanks.

GRAMMAR 10.3 > p150

HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress (3)

9 a CD3 17 Listen and notice the stressed words.

What's she like? What does she like doing? What does she look like?

- b Look at Audio Script 603 16 p163. Listen again and follow the stress.
- a Write the questions for these answers.
 - 1 She's tall, attractive and friendly. What's she like?
 - 2 She's quite short and has got dark hair.
 - 3 He's selfish and lazy, but really good-looking!
 - 4 She likes swimming and cycling.
 - 5 He's not very tall and he's bald.
 - 6 They're both quite shy.
 - b CD3 18 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise. Copy the stress.

Get ready ... Get it right!

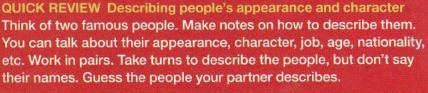
- Write the names of three friends on a piece of paper. Think how you can describe their character, appearance and the things they enjoy doing. Don't write this information.
- **a** Work in pairs and swap papers. Take turns to ask and answer the questions in **7** about your partner's friends.
 - **b** Choose one of your partner's friends that you would like to meet. Tell the class why you chose that person.



10C WORLD



Real World talking about health Vocabulary health problems; treatment





Match the sentences to the people A-H.

- 1 I've got a stomach ache. B
- 3 I've got a headache.
- 4 I've got a cold.

2 I feel sick.

- I've got a cough.
- My back hurts.
- 7 I've got a temperature.
- 8 I've got a sore throat.
- Work in pairs. Write these words in the table. Check in VOCABULARY 10.5 > p149.

a headache a stomach ache back terrible toothache a sore throat foot sick arm a cold better a cough a temperature leg

I've got	a stomach ache
I feel	ill
my hurts	back

TIP • We can say I've got a stomach ache/toothache or I've got stomach ache/toothache, but not I've got headache.

b CD3 19 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

Get well soon

a Work in pairs. Match these words/phrases to the verbs. Check in VOCABULARY 10.6 > p150.

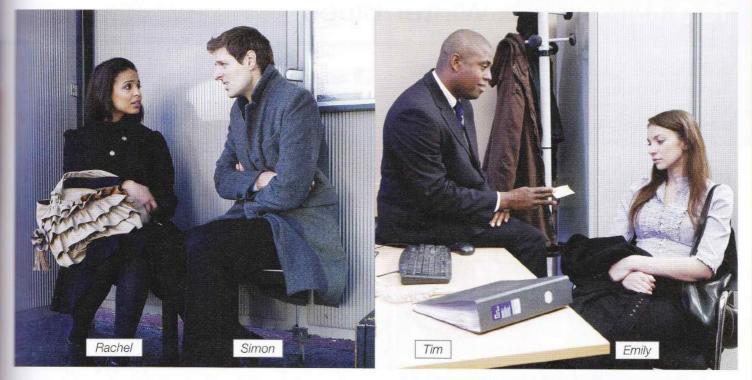
> some painkillers to bed at home the day off to the doctor some cough medicine home to the dentist some antibiotics in bed

to bed at home the day off	go	stay	take
1	to bed	at home	the day off

b Work in groups. Look at the words/phrases in 2a and 3a again. What do you usually do when you're ill?

When I've got a cold I usually stay in bed.

I usually take some aspirin.



- a VIDEO 10 GD3 20 Watch or listen to two conversations. What's wrong with Simon and Emily? Are they going to the meeting?
 - **b** Watch or listen again. Who says these things Rachel (R) or Tim (T)?
 - 1 Are you OK? R
 - 2 Are you alright?
 - 3 What's the matter?
 - 4 What's wrong?
 - 5 Why don't you go home?
- 6 You shouldn't go to work today.
- 7 You should go to the doctor.
- 8 I hope you get better soon.
- 9 Take the day off.
- 10 Get well soon.

REAL WORLD

OK

Talking about health

matter

Cover 4b. Then fill in the gaps in the table with the words in the boxes.

hetter

alright What's	dear hope	shouldn't don't
asking about someone's health	expressing sympathy	giving advice
Are you ¹ OK? Are you ² ? wrong? What's the ⁴ ?	Oh, 5 . I 6 you get 7 soon. 8 well soon.	Why ⁹ you go home? You ¹⁰ go to work today. You ¹¹ go to the doctor.
		Take the day 12

Get

REAL WORLD 10.1 > p150

HELP WITH LISTENING

Being sympathetic

a CD3 21 Listen to this question said twice. The first is not sympathetic.
The second is sympathetic.

What's the matter?

b CD3 22 Which person sounds sympathetic, a or b?

1	Are you OK?	(a)	b
2	Are you alright?	a	b
3	What's wrong?	a	b
4	What's the matter?	a	b
5	Oh, dear.	a	b
6	I hope you get better soon.	а	b

- 7 CD3 23 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 5. Copy the intonation.

 Are you OK?
- Work in pairs. Look at Audio and Video Script
 VIDEO 10 CD3 20 p163. Choose conversation
 1 or 2. Underline all the phrases from 5. Then
 practise the conversation with your partner.
 Change roles and practise the conversation again.
- a Choose an illness from 2a. Have conversations with other students. Take turns to be sympathetic and give advice.
 - **b** Tell the class about your illness. What advice did students give you? Was it good advice, do you think?

VOCABULARY 10D AND SKILLS

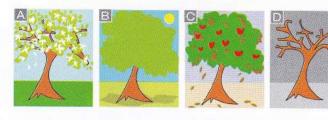
Winter blues

Vocabulary seasons; weather; word building Skills reading: a magazine article

QUICK REVIEW Health problems and treatment Work in pairs. Take turns to mime illnesses to your partner. Don't speak! He/She guesses what's wrong and gives advice.

a Match the seasons to pictures A-D. Then check in VOCABULARY 10.7 p150.

winter summer autumn spring



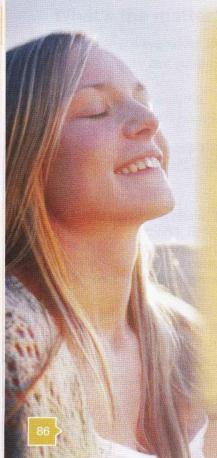
b Work in pairs. Which is your favourite season? Why?

a Before you read, check these words with your teacher.

depressed a scientist a box bright light sad

- **b** Read the first paragraph of the article. Why does the woman have a light on her desk?
- c Read the whole article. Answer these questions.
- 1 What happened to Herb Kern in winter?
- 2 What did some scientists make for him?
- 3 Why do people get SAD?
- 4 Do men get SAD more than women?
- 5 How do you know if people have SAD?
- 6 In which countries is SAD common?
- 7 How long should you use a light box every day?
- d Work in pairs. Compare answers.
- Work in the same pairs. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 Do you feel depressed in winter? Why?/Why not?
 - 2 What activities do you usually do in winter?

If you're SAD, see the light!



A lot of people feel depressed in winter – but there's an easy way to fight those winter blues.

In the 1970s, an American engineer called Herb Kern noticed that in spring and summer he was happy and had a lot of energy, but every winter he became depressed and lazy. He thought it was because there wasn't much daylight in the winter and asked some scientists to make a 'light box'. He put the box on his desk and after a few days he felt a lot better. In 1982 the scientists gave his illness a name – Seasonal Affective Disorder, or SAD.

People get SAD in autumn and winter, when the days are shorter and there is less daylight. It is more common in women than in men. People with SAD usually sleep a lot and feel tired all the time. They also eat a lot of sweet food and feel depressed. In the UK about 5%



of people have SAD and it is common in other countries like the USA, Sweden and Ireland. The best treatment for this illness is bright light. People with SAD should use a light box for half an hour a day. Or you can go on holiday to a sunny country, of course!

a Work in pairs. Match these weather words to the pictures. Then check in VOCABULARY 10.8 > p150.



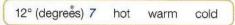


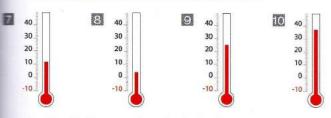












- b What's the weather like today?
- Work in pairs. Student A p108. Student B p113.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Word building

a Look at the table. Fill in the gaps. How do we make adjectives from nouns? How do we make nouns from adjectives?

noun	adjective	adjective	noun
sun	sunny	ill	illness
	windy		happiness
cloud		sad	
fog		fit	

- b Check in VOCABULARY 10.9 > p150.
- a Choose the correct words.
 - 1 It was very sun/(sunny) yesterday.
 - 2 There's a lot of cloud/cloudy today.
 - 3 It was wind/windy last weekend.
 - 4 We get a lot of fog/foggy where we live.
 - 5 I always get the same ill/illness every winter.
 - 6 I'm usually sad/sadness at the end of a holiday.
 - 7 Some of my friends are very fit/fitness.
 - 8 I think money is more important than happy/happiness.
 - **b** Tick the sentences that are true for where you live and for you.
 - Work in pairs. Compare sentences. How many are the same?

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

The letter a

Listen and notice four ways we say the letter a. Listen again and practise.

/æ/ hat bank /eɪ/ lazy headache /ɑː/ bath father /ə/ ago stomach

2 a Work in pairs. Write these words in the table.

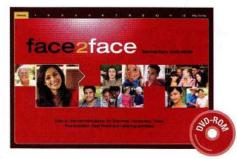
rabbit radio another contract answers games elephant family arm famous island dance

/æ/	h a t	rabbit
/a:/	b a th	
/eɪ/	la zy	
/ə/	a go	

- b CD3 25 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- a CD3 26 Listen and practise these sentences.
 - 1 I often have my laptop with me when I travel by taxi.
 - 2 My hard-working father likes fast food and dancing.
 - 3 Take a suitcase when you go on holiday by plane.
 - 4 This is the address of the accountant's company.
 - 5 The manager of our company has fast food every day.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Take turns to say the sentences.

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - Extra Practice 10 and Progress Portfolio 10 p124
 - Language Summary 10 p149
 - 10A-D Workbook p50
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 10 with Review Video



- Reading and Writing
 - Portfolio 10 The advice page Workbook p82 Reading letters asking for advice Writing pronouns and possessive adjectives; a letter of advice

Happy New Year!

Vocabulary New Year's resolutions

Grammar be going to (1): positive, negative
and Wh- questions

QUICK REVIEW The weather Work in pairs. Write all the weather words you know. Then use words on your list to describe the weather in your town or city: today, yesterday, last weekend, in December, in June.

Speaking and Vocabulary

New Year's resolutions

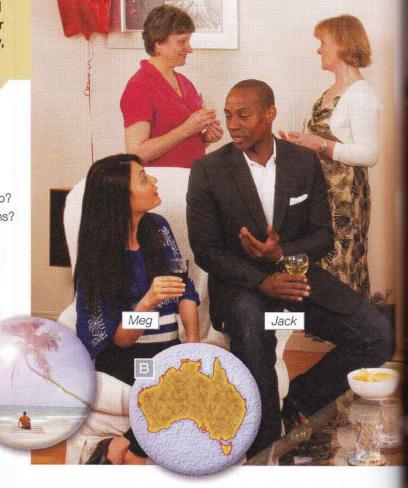
- Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 How do people in your country celebrate New Year?
 - 2 Where were you last New Year's Eve? What did you do?
 - 3 Do people in your country make New Year's resolutions? If so, what kind of resolutions?
- a Look at New Year's resolutions 1–8. Then match these words/phrases to the verbs in bold. Check in VOCABULARY 11.1 > p151.

fit weight smoking house less fun more exercise chocolate cake

- 1 get a new job/ fit
- 2 work hard/
- 3 lose three kilos/
- 4 have a holiday/
- 5 do a computer course/
- 6 stop working at weekends/
- 7 move to another country/_
- 8 not eat sweet things/
- b Work in pairs. Take turns to test your partner.

Listening and Speaking

- 27 Look at the photo of a New Year's Eve party. Listen to two conversations. Match the people to their New Year's resolutions A–E.
- a Look at the people's New Year's resolutions. Fill in the gaps with words from 2a.
 - 1 I'm going to work less and have more fun .
 - 2 I'm going to have a this year.
 - 3 I'm going to ______ to Australia.
 - 4 I'm going to do a
 - 5 We're going to get ____
 - 6 Val's going to stop_
 - 7 David's going to _____ weight.
 - 8 I'm going to do more
 - 9 I'm not going to eat _____ things any more.
 - b CD3 27 Listen again and check.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be going to (1): positive and negative

- a Look at the sentences in 4a. Then choose the correct words in the rules.
 - These sentences talk about the past/present/future.
 - The people decided to do these things before/when they said them.
 - We use be going to + infinitive for future plans/ things we do every day.
 - **b** Look at the sentences in the table. Then write sentences 7, 8 and 9 from **4a** in the table.

subject	be (+ not)	going to	infinitive	
We	're	going to	get	fit.
Val	's	going to	stop	smoking

c Check in GRAMMAR 11.1 > p152.



6 CD3 28 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 4a. Copy the stress.

I'm going to /gəuɪŋtə/ work less and have more fun.

a Fill in the gaps with the correct form of be going to and the verb in brackets.

1	I 'm going to look fo	r a new job. (look for)
	He	working at weekends. (stop)
3	They	to the gym. (go)
4	1	any cigarettes. (not/buy)
5	She	her house. (sell)
6	We	every weekend. (not/eat out)
7	He	a new computer. (buy)
8	She	in the UK. (not/stay)

b Work in pairs. Match the sentences to the people at the party.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be going to (1): Wh- questions

a Look at the questions in the table. Notice the word order.

question word	be	subject	going to	infinitive	-
What	are	you	going to	do	next year?
Where	's	she	going to	live?	

- b Write questions 1 and 2 in the table.
- 1 Where's he going to study?
- 2 When are they going to start getting fit?
- c Check in GRAMMAR 11.2 p152.
- a Make questions with you and be going to.
 - 1 What / do after class?
 What are you going to do after class?
 - 2 How / get home today?
 - 3 What / do next weekend?
 - 4 What / have for dinner tonight?
 - 5 Where / have lunch tomorrow?
 - 6 When / do your English homework?
 - b CD3 29 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in 9a. Copy the weak forms.

What are you /əjə/ going to /tə/ do after class?

Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in 9a.

Get ready ... Get it right!

What are you going to do in the future? Write notes about your plans for: next week, next month, next year. Use the phrases in 2a or your own ideas.

next week - have lunch with my sister

a Work in groups of four. Ask and answer questions about your plans. Give more information if possible. Are any of your plans the same?

What are you going to do next week?

On Monday I'm going to have lunch with a friend.

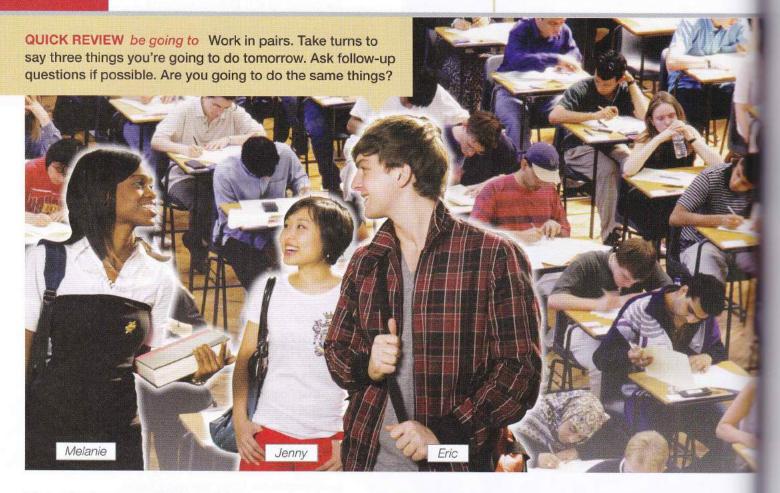
b Tell the class about people with the same plans as you.

No more exams!

Vocabulary studying

Grammar be going to or might; be going to (2):

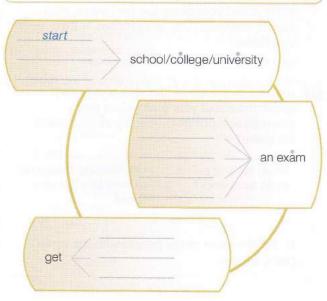
yes/no questions and short answers



Vocabulary and Speaking Studying

Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps with these words/phrases.
Then check in VOCABULARY 11.2 > p151.

start revise for take go to some qualifications do pass fail a degree leave a job



- Work in the same pairs. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 Which things in 1 do people usually celebrate?
 - 2 What was the last exam you took? Was it difficult?
 - 3 Did you celebrate when you finished? If so, what did you do?

Listening and Speaking

a CD3 30 Listen to Eric, Jenny and Melanie talking after their final university exam. Tick the things they talk about.

the exam a party a film a drink a club a phone call a concert a meal a job

b Listen again. Tick the true sentences. Correct the false ones.

difficult

- 1 The exam was easy.
- 2 Eric couldn't answer the last three questions.
- 3 There's a big party at Caroline's house this evening.
- 4 Eric wants to go home and sleep.
- 5 He's going to meet some friends this evening.
- 6 Jenny's going to phone her sister.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR be going to or might

a Look at these sentences. Then choose the correct words in the rules.

I'm going to meet some friends in town at seven.
I might go to the party or I might go out for a meal.

- We use might/be going to to say a future plan is decided.
- We use might/be going to to say something in the future is possible, but not decided.
- After might we use the infinitive/infinitive with to.

TIP . Might is the same for all subjects (I, you, he, etc.).

- b Check in GRAMMAR 11.3 p152.
- 5 CD3 31 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise sentences with *might*.

I might go to the party.

- Look at Eric, Jenny and Melanie's plans for the summer. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of be going to or might and the verb in brackets.
 (✓) = decided, (✓X) = not decided.
 - 1 (1) Eric 's going to have a holiday. (have)
 - 2 (1) Jenny a Spanish course. (do)
 - 3 (X) Melanie _____ camping. (go)
 - 4 (🗸) Eric ______ for his father. (not work)
 - 5 (Jenny and Sam _____ married, (get)
 - 6 (X) Melanie friends in Scotland. (visit)
 - 7 (/X) Eric _____ in a restaurant (work).
- a Write three things you might do and three things you're going to do next month.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Take turns to say your sentences. Are any the same?

Listening and Speaking

HELP WITH LISTENING going to

- a CD3 32 Listen and notice the two different ways we say going to. Both are correct.
 - a How are you going to /gəuɪŋtə/ celebrate tonight?
 - b I'm going to /gənə/ meet some friends in town.
 - **b** CD3 33 Listen to these sentences. Which way do these people say *going to*, a or b?

		/gəʊɪŋtə/	/gənə/
1	Are you going to look for a job?	а	(b)
2	My cousin's going to teach English.	а	b
3	I'm going to do a business course.	а	b
4	How are you going to pay for it?	а	b
5	My parents are going to help me.	а	b
6	Are you going to sell your car?	а	b

- 9 CD3 34 Listen to Eric, Jenny and Melanie talk about their plans. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Is Jenny going to look for a job? Yes, she is.
 - 2 Are Jenny and Sam going to Italy next month?
 - 3 Is Melanie going to teach English?
 - 4 Is Eric going to do a computer course?
 - 5 Are Eric's parents going to help him pay for the course?
 - 6 Is Eric going to sell his car?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR be going to (2): yes/no questions and short answers

- a Fill in the gaps with the correct part of the verb be.
 - 1 A Are you going to look for a job?
 - B Yes, I _____ ./No, I ____ not.
 - 2 A he going to sell his car?
 - B Yes, he ./No, he
 - 3 A ____ his parents going to help him?
 - B Yes, they _____./No, they ____

TIP • We can also answer yes/no questions with (Yes,) I might: A Are you going to buy it? B I might.

- b Check in GRAMMAR 11.4 > p152.
- Work in pairs. Student A p108. Student B p113.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- Look at these possible plans. Make yes/no questions with you and the correct form of be going to.
 - meet a friend after class Are you going to meet a friend after class?
 - work next weekend
 - study toniaht
 - stay at home tomorrow
 - go away next weekend
 - have a holiday in the next three months
 - watch a DVD this evening
 - buy some clothes next weekend
 - take an exam this year



- a Ask other students your questions. Try to find one person who is going to do each thing. Then ask two follow-up questions.
 - b Tell the class about another student's plans.

THE WORLD

Directions

Real World directions; asking for and giving directions

QUICK REVIEW Places in a town/city Write a list of places in a town or city (a museum, etc.). Work in pairs and compare lists. How many of these places are near where you are now?



Hill Place

- Three bedrooms (two double, one single). Sleeps 5.
- Kitchen and small garden.
- Living room with TV and DVD player.
- Shower room and separate toilet.
- 5 min walk to town centre.
- 10 min walk to beach.
- From £430 per week.

Benton House

- Three double bedrooms.
 Sleeps 6.
- Large kitchen and garden.
- Comfortable living room with DVD player and cable TV.
- Bathroom with separate shower.
- 10 min walk to town centre.
- Only 1 min from beach.
- From £480 per week.

Seaton Holiday Homes 01834 654389

Choosing a holiday home

- a Look at the photo of the Wilson family. Then read the adverts for holiday homes in Seaton. Which place is better for the family's holiday, do you think? Why?
 - b Work in pairs. Say which holiday home you chose and why.
- 2 CD3 35 Listen to Alison phone Seaton Holiday Homes. When is the family's holiday? Which holiday home does she choose? Why?

It's on the left

Work in pairs. Which of these phrases do you know? Then do the exercise in REAL WORLD 11.1 > p152.

turn right turn left go over the bridge go past the pub go along this road/street it's on the/your left it's on the/your right it's opposite it's next to

- a Read the email and look at the map. Draw the route from *You are here* to the holiday home.
 - **b** Work in pairs. Check your route. Which number is the holiday home on the map?



Dear Mrs Wilson

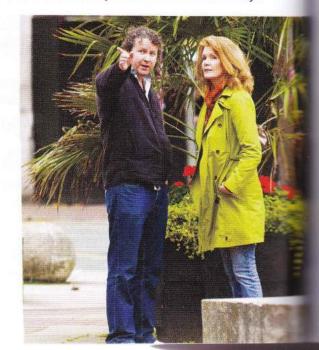
Thank you for booking one of our holiday homes. Here are your directions.

When you drive into Seaton you're on Abbott Street. Go along this street, past the bus station, then go over the bridge and turn right. That's East Street. Go along this street and turn left. Then go along South Road for about 100 metres and turn right. Benton House is the first house on the left, next to a car park.

I hope you have a wonderful holiday.

Pauline Wells

- 5 CD3 36 Look at the map and listen. Start at You are here. Which four places do the directions take you to?
- are at the bus station. Close your book.
 Watch or listen to their conversations.
 Which places do they want to go to?
 - **b** Watch or listen again. Find the places on the map. What numbers are they?



REAL WORLD

Asking for and giving directions

a Fill in the gaps with these words.

Excuse	Where's	get	there

ASKING FOR DIRECTIONS

Excuse me. Is ___ (a newsagent's) near here? Excuse me. (the post office)? Excuse me. How do I/we _____ to (the market)?

one	there	over	miss	S
turn	on	past	next	It's

GIVING DIRECTIONS There's one in (Berry Street). Go along this road/street and right/left. the pub. Go _____ the bridge. (The newsagent's) is the/your right/left. opposite (the supermarket). It's _____ to (the café). It's over You can't it.

8 CD3 38 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 7a.

Excuse me. Is there a newsagent's near here?

- 9 a Fill in the gaps in these conversations with words from 7a. They all start at You are here on the map.
- 1 A Excuse me. Is 1 there a police station 2 here? B Yes, there's one ³ Berry Street. Go ⁴ this road and 5 right. The police station is 6 your left. next 7 the baker's.
 - A Thank you very much.
- 2 A Excuse me. How do I 8 _____ to the Park Hotel? B 9 along this road and go 10 the bridge. the market and turn left. That's Russell Street. The Park Hotel is on 12 left. You 13
 - A Thanks a lot.
- 3 A Excuse me. 14 the museum?
 - B It's 15 there, opposite the station.
 - A Oh yes, I can see it. Thanks.
 - b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Find the places on the map. What numbers are they?
 - c Work in the same pairs. Practise the conversations.
- Work in pairs. Student A p105. Student B p110.



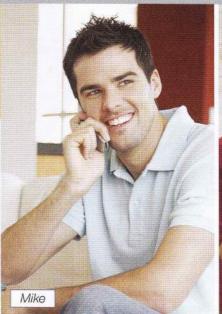
VOCABULARY 11D AND SKILLS An invitation

Vocabulary collocations Skills reading: an email; listening: a phone conversation

QUICK REVIEW Directions Work in pairs. Write five places near where you are now that you both know. Take turns to give directions to two of the places. Your partner guesses the place. Start with: Go out of the building and

- a Work on your own. Answer these questions.
 - 1 When did you last go to a wedding or a party?
 - 2 Where was it?
 - 3 Whose wedding or party was it?
 - 4 How many people were there?
 - 5 What did you wear?
 - 6 What did/didn't you like about the wedding or party?
 - 7 What else do you remember about it?
 - **b** Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions
 - in 1a. Give more information if possible.
- a Read the email. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Whose wedding is Mike going to?
 - 2 When did he book his flight?
 - 3 When is he going to arrive in L.A.?
 - 4 Where does he want to stay?
 - 5 What is he going to do after the wedding?
 - b Work in pairs. Compare answers.







a CD3>39 Mike is phoning his aunt in L.A. Put these things in the order they talk about them.

> a hotel a motorbike the wedding 1 Mike's email a restaurant

- b Listen again. Tick the true sentences. Correct the false ones.
- 1 Aunt Ellie replied to Mike's email.
- 2 Mike can stay at Ellie and Sid's house.
- 3 Ellie is going to book a hotel room for him.
- 4 Mike is going to rent a motorbike.
- 5 He's going to get a taxi from the airport.
- 6 He's going to have dinner at Ellie and Sid's favourite restaurant.

HELP WITH LISTENING Linking: review

- Remember: we usually link words that end in a consonant sound with words that begin with a vowel sound.
- a Work in pairs. Look at the beginning of the conversation and mark the linking.

MIKE Hello, Aunt Ellie. This is Mike. I'm calling from England about Ian and Amy's wedding. Is this a good time to call?

ELLIE Mike! Yes, of course it is.

- b Look at Audio Script CD3 39 p165. Check your answers.
- c CD3 39 Listen again to the whole conversation and follow the linking.



HELP WITH VOCABULARY Collocations

a Read the email again. Find two words or phrases that go with these verbs. Write them in the table.

book	stay	rent	get
	with (you)		

- b Choose the correct verbs in these words/phrases.
- 1 stay/(rent) a flat
- 6 rent/book a house
- 2 book/rent a train ticket
- 7 get/stay in a hotel
- 3 get/book married
- 8 rent/get divorced
- 4 get/rent home
- 9 stay/get at home
- 5 book/stay a seat on a train
- 10 book/rent a table in a restaurant
- c Check in VOCABULARY 11.3 > p151.
- Work in pairs. Take turns to test your partner on the collocations in 5a and 5b.

a flight

book a flight

- a Fill in the gaps with the correct form of book, stay, rent or get.
 - 1 When did you last stay with a friend?
 - 2 Do you flights or train tickets online?
 - 3 How do you home after class?
 - 4 Where was the last hotel you
 - 5 Do you your house or flat?
 - 6 When did you last a table at a restaurant?
 - 7 What's a good age to
 - married?

 - 8 Do you usually a car when you go on holiday?
 - b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Ask follow-up questions if possible.
- Two friends from another country want to visit you. Write them an email and answer their questions.
 - Where can we stay?
 - How can we get there from the airport?
 - How can we travel around?



HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION

/u/ and /u:/

CD3 40 Listen to these sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/u/ look put would

/u:/ room do fruit

a Work in pairs. Look at the vowels in bold. Write the words in the table

> book blue woman June should wood suit food sugar boots choose good-looking

/ʊ/ look	book
/u:/ room	blue

- b CD3 41 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- a Work in pairs. Look at the vowels in bold. Which vowel sound is different?

1 lose knew (look)

- 4 took school scooter
- 2 juice shoes wolf
- 5 soup good wouldn't
- 3 too bookshop could 6 cook butcher's move
- b CD3 42 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

continue2learn

- Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World
 - Extra Practice 11 and Progress Portfolio 11 p125
 - Language Summary 11 p151
 - 11A-D Workbook p55
 - Self-study DVD-ROM 11 with Review Video



- Reading and Writing
 - Portfolio 11 A town by the sea Workbook p84 Reading a tourist brochure; an email Writing common mistakes; a description of a town or city

QUICK REVIEW Collocations Write words or phrases that go with these verbs: book, stay, rent, get (book a flight, stay in a hotel, etc.). Work in pairs. Compare lists. Take turns to make sentences with the phrases on your lists: I stayed in a hotel last month.

Vocabulary Big and small numbers

Work in pairs. Match the numbers to the words. Then check in VOCABULARY 12.1 > p153.

 0.2
 1,000,000
 2.45
 850,000

 32,470
 127
 2,300
 50,000,000

- 1 nought point two 0.2
- 2 two point four five
- 3 a hundred and twenty-seven
- 4 two thousand, three hundred
- 5 thirty-two thousand, four hundred and seventy
- 6 eight hundred and fifty thousand
- 7 a million
- 8 fifty million
- 2 a CD3 43 Listen and write the numbers.
 - b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

Reading

a Before you read, check these words with your teacher.

a bowl a chilli heavy cost a haircut a litre

- **b** Read the article. Match the world records 1–5 to pictures A–E.
- a Read the article again. Fill in gaps a-h with this information.

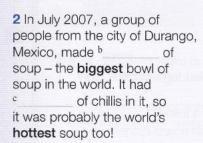
73 hours £8,000 \$399 152 hours 35.6 kg 5,350 litres one second 182 kg

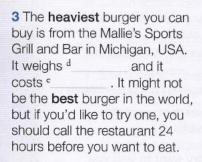
- **b** CD3 44 Listen to the article. Check your answers.
- Which record is the most interesting or surprising, do you think?

RECORD

1 Sanjay Kumar Sinha taught the longest lesson in the world at a school in Bandra, India, in 2005. The lesson was a and 37 minutes

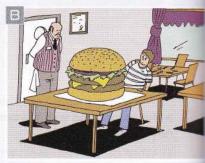
long and it was all about English grammar.

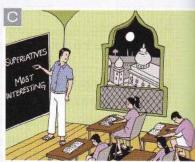




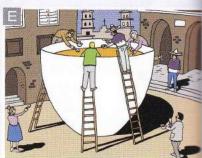
- 4 The shortest film in the world is *Colin*, made by Marc Price, and it's just flong. And the longest film is *Cinématon*, directed by Gérard Courant. It's glong so it might also be the world's most boring film.
- 5 Beverley Lateo, from Italy, had the world's **most expensive** haircut in October 2007. She paid h for a visit to Stuart Philips Hair Salon in London but she got a free lunch!











HELP WITH GRAMMAR Superlatives

a Look at the superlatives in bold in the article.
Write them in the table.

adjective	comparative	superlative
long	longer	longest
short	shorter	
big	bigger	<u> </u>
hot	hotter	
heavy	heavier	
boring	more boring	
expensive	more expensive	
good	better	1
bad	worse	worst

- b Choose the correct words in these rules.
- We use comparatives/superlatives to compare two things.
- We use comparatives/superlatives to compare three or more things.
- Work in pairs. Look at the table in 5a again.
 What are the rules for making superlatives?
 (Think about spelling and the number of syllables.)
- d Check in GRAMMAR 12.1 > p153 and read the TIPS.
- 6 a Write the superlatives.
 - 1 rich richest
- 6 slow
- 2 difficult
- 7 safe
- 3 thin
- 8 beautiful
- 4 happy
- 9 bad
- 5 dirty
- 10 careful
- **b** CD3 45 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the superlatives in **6a**. Notice how we say *-est.* richest /rɪtʃɪst/

Reading, Listening and Speaking

- a Work in groups. Read the World Quiz. Fill in the gaps with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets. Then do the quiz.
 - **b** CD3 46 Listen to Abby and Len do the quiz. Check your answers. How many answers did your group get right?
 - c Listen again. What do these numbers refer to?
 - a \$6,000
- d 74.2 million
- **b** 57.8°
- e 6,650 km
- c 8,000
- f 17,000
- d Work in pairs. Compare answers.

The World Quiz

What's the wo	orld's	city? (expensive
a Moscow	b Tokyo	c Milan
Which of thes	e countries is the	(hc
a Libya	b USA	c Australia
Which of thes	e cities is the	? (old)
a Athens	b Rome	c Damascus
Which of thes tourists? (pop	e countries is the ular)	wit
a Spain	b China	c France
Which is the _		river in the world? (lo
a The Nile	b The Amazor	All the second s

HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress: review

country? (crowded)

c Monaco

a Work in pairs. Look at the beginning of Abby and Len's conversation. Decide which words are stressed.

b Singapore

6 Which is the world's

a Bangladesh

ABBY Do you like doing quizzes, Len?

LEN Yes, I love them. Ask me the first question.

ABBY OK. What's the world's most expensive city?

- b Look at Audio Script CD3 46 p165. Check your answers.
- c CD3 46 Listen to the whole conversation again. Follow the sentence stress.

Get ready ... Get it right!

- Write six of these things on a piece of paper.
 Write one or two words, not complete sentences.
 Don't write the answers in order.
 - the name of the oldest or youngest person in your family
 - your oldest or most important possession
 - the most interesting or most boring thing you did last weekend
 - the latest or earliest you went to bed last week
 - the best or worst present you got last birthday
 - the best or worst film you saw last year
- a Work in pairs. Swap papers. Take turns to ask questions about your partner's words. Ask follow-up questions.

Is Clara the youngest person in your family?

Yes, she is. She's two years old.

b Tell the class two things about your partner.

12B Have you ever ...?

Vocabulary past participles Grammar Present Perfect: positive and negative: Have you ever ... ? questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Comparatives and superlatives Write ten adjectives. Work in pairs. Say the adjectives. Your partner says the comparative and superlative: A good B better, best.

Speaking, Listening and Reading

- Work in groups. Discuss these questions.
 - 1 Do you know anyone who is self-employed? What do they do?
 - 2 What are the good and bad things about being self-employed?
 - 3 Would you like to be self-employed? Why?/Why not?
- 2 a CD3 47 Listen and read about three friends, Steve, Lucy and Guy. Do they like being self-employed?
 - **b** Tick the true sentences. Correct the false ones.
 - 1 Steve went to Mexico two weeks ago.
 - 2 He was in the Caribbean two months ago.
 - 3 He wants to go to Australia on holiday.
 - 4 Guy and Lucy were self-employed three years ago.
 - 5 The Prime Minister came to their restaurant last month.
 - 6 Guy and Lucy are going to Peru next year.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Perfect: positive and negative

- a Look at sentences 1 and 2. Then answer questions a and b.
 - 1 I've been to about forty countries. (Present Perfect)
 - 2 Two weeks ago I went to Mexico. (Past Simple)
 - a In sentence 1, do we know when Steve went to these countries?
 - b In sentence 2, do we know when he went to Mexico?
 - b Complete these rules with Present Perfect (PP) or Past Simple (PS).
 - to talk about experiences in life until now. We use the We don't say when they happened.
 - We use the _____ if we say when something happened.
 - c Look at the examples of the Present Perfect in blue in the texts. Then complete the table with 've, 's, haven't and hasn't.

POSITIVE (+)

l/you/we/they + ____ + past participle + past participle he/she/it +

NEGATIVE (-)

I/you/we/they + ____ + past participle he/she/it + _____ + past participle

TIP • We can say I haven't ... or I've never ... : I've never been to Australia.

d Check in GRAMMAR 12.2 p154. Read the rules for making past participles and the TIPS.

I love being a self-employed travel writer. I've been to about forty countries and I've stayed in some of the world's best hotels. I've written travel articles about lots of amazing places. Two weeks ago I went to Mexico and last month I spent five days in the Caribbean. But I haven't been to Australia. That's one country I'd love to go to - but for a holiday, not for work!



Vocabulary and Speaking

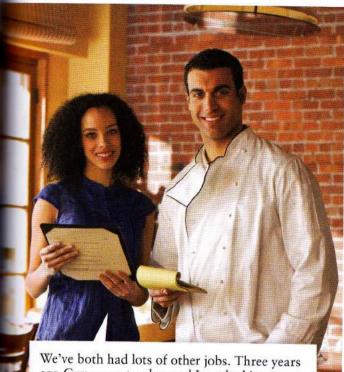
Past participles

What are the past participles of these verbs? Check irregular past participles in the Irregular Verb List, p167. Which five verbs are regular?

1 be been 5 lose 9 study 2 cook 6 meet 10 visit 3 go 7 see 11 work 4 have 8 stay 12 write

b CD3 48 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the infinitive, Past Simple and past participle of the verbs in 4a.

be, was/were, been



We've both had lots of other jobs. Three years ago Guy was a teacher and I worked in an office. But we'd rather be self-employed and we love having our own restaurant. We've met some really interesting people – last year the Prime Minister had dinner here! But it's hard work and Guy and I have never had a holiday together. We might go to Peru next year – Guy hasn't been to South America before.



- a Look at these phrases and write six sentences about your experiences. The sentences can be positive or negative.
 - work in a restaurant
 I've worked in a restaurant.
 - go to Canada
 I haven't been to Canada.
 - meet someone from Ireland
 - see a Japanese film
 - stay in a five-star hotel
 - cook a meal for someone's birthday
 - work in an office
 - study another foreign language
 - lose something important
 - **b** Work in groups. Tell other students your sentences. How many are the same?

Listening and Speaking

- a CD3 49 Listen to a conversation between Steve and Lucy. Where are they? What do they talk about?
 - b Listen again. Choose the correct words.
 - 1 Steve has been to Peru/Brazil.
 - 2 He went there about two/three years ago.
 - 3 Lucy went to Australia six/eight years ago.
 - 4 She travelled around Australia by bus/car.
 - 5 Guy has/hasn't been to Australia.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Have you ever ... ? questions and short answers

a Fill in the gaps in these questions and short answers with have, haven't, did or didn't.

A _____ you ever been to Peru?

B Yes, I _____./No, I ____.

A _____ you have a good time?

B Yes, I _____./No, I ____.

- **b** Complete the rule with *Present Perfect (PP)* or *Past Simple (PS)*.
- We use the _____ to ask about people's experiences. If the answer is yes, we use the _____ to ask for (or give) more information.

TIP • ever + Present Perfect = any time in your life until now. We often use ever in questions.

- c Check in GRAMMAR 12.3 p154.
- 8 CD3 50 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Copy the stress.

Have you ever been to Peru? Yes, I have.

9 a Fill in the gaps. Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect or Past Simple and complete the short answers.

1 A 1 Have you ever been to France? (go)

A Where ⁴______you____? (stay)

B I 5 a flat near Bordeaux. (rent)

2 A ⁶ you ever a diary? (write)

A 9_____ you ____ in it every day? (write)

B No, I 10 . Only when I 11 on holiday. (be)

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Then practise the conversations.

Get ready ... Get it right!

Work in two groups. Group A p108. Group B p113.

See you soon!

Real World at the airport; saying goodbye Vocabulary things and places at an airport

QUICK REVIEW Past participles Write ten verbs. Work in pairs. Say the verbs to your partner. He/She says the Past Simple and the past participle: A see B saw, seen.

Travel experiences

a Fill in gaps 1–8 with the past participles of the verb in brackets. Check new past participles in the Irregular Verb List, p167.



Have you ever ...

1	missed	_ a plane? (r	niss)		
2		to another	to another country by boat or ferry? (travel)		
3		on a long t	on a long train or coach journey? (go)		
4			in a very small plane? (fly)		
5		at an airport or a station? (sleep)			
6		a really ter	a really terrible journey? (have)		
7		ill on a plane? (be)			
8		_ or	in another country? (drive, cycle)		



b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Ask follow-up questions if possible.

Have you ever missed a plane?

Yes, I have.

When was that?

About two years ago.

c Tell the class about your partner's travel experiences.

At the airport

2 Tick the words/phrases you know. Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 12.2 p153.

a passport a boarding pass hand luggage a ticket pack your bags passengers a flight number a gate a check-in desk a bag drop a window/a middle/an aisle seat on time delayed

- a VIDEO 12.1 CD3 51 Daisy is at the airport. Watch or listen and answer the questions.
 - 1 How many bags does she check in? 3
 - 3 Has she got an aisle seat?
 - 2 What is her seat number?
- 4 Is the flight delayed?
- **b** Work in pairs. Look at the conversation. What does the man at the bag drop say to her?

Hello, can I have your passport, please?

MAN Hello. Can I have your , please?

DAISY

MAN How many are you checking in?

DAISY ²

MAN Did you yourself?

MAN And have you got any

MAN And have you got any

DAISY 4

MAN OK. Here's your . You're in seat 16F.

DAISY Oh, OK. 6

MAN gate 12

DAISY 7

MAN Yes, it is. Boarding is at



. Enjoy your



MAN Bye.

DAISY 8

a Fill in gaps 1-8 in 3b with these sentences.

Yes. Here you are. One. Is that a window seat? Yes, this bag. Which gate is it? Yes, I did. Is the flight on time? Thanks. Bye.

b VIDEO 12.1 GD3 51 Watch or listen again. Check your answers.

- a Work in pairs. Practise the conversation in 3b. Take turns to be Daisy.
 - b Work in new pairs. Practise the conversation again. When you're Daisy, close your book.

REAL WORLD Saying goodbye

Fill in the gaps with these words/phrases.

Don't forget	Have you got See you	u Have a
1	everything? your passport? your boarding pass?	Yes, I have, thanks.
2	nice holiday. good time. good trip.	Thanks, I will.
to send me/us	a text. an email. a postcard.	Yes, of course.
4	in a month. soon. on the next course.	Yes, see you.

REAL WORLD 12.2 > p154

CD3 52 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 6.

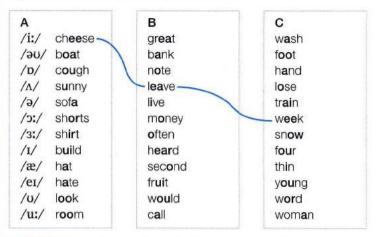
Have you got everything?

- 8 a VIDEO 12.2 GD3 53 Watch or listen to Daisy saying goodbye to her parents at the airport. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Which country is she going to?
 - 2 Who is she going to send a postcard to?
 - 3 How long is she going away for?
 - b Watch or listen again. Tick the sentences in 6 that you hear.
- a Work in pairs. Choose one of these situations and write a conversation.
 - 1 Two friends are saying goodbye at the airport. One of them is going on holiday to Morocco for two weeks.
 - 2 Two students are saying goodbye at the end of their course. Their new course starts in three months' time.
 - b Work in the same pairs. Practise your conversation until you can remember it.
 - c Work with another pair. Take turns to role-play your conversations.



HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Vowel sounds: review

a Work in pairs. Look at the letters in bold. Match the words in boxes A, B and C with the same vowel sound.



- b CD3 54 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.
- Work in groups of three: student A, student B, student C. Take turns to say words with the same vowel sounds in 1a.



a Write one word with the same vowel sound as each group of three words in 1a.

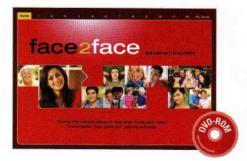
cheese, leave, week seat

b Work in pairs. Compare words. Are your partner's words correct?

continue2learn

■ Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- Extra Practice 12 and Progress Portfolio 12 p126
- Language Summary 12 p153
- 12A-C Workbook p60
- Self-study DVD-ROM 12 with Review Video



Reading and Writing

Portfolio 12 At the airport Workbook p86 Reading airport signs; a postcard Writing useful phrases for a postcard Work in groups of four. Read the rules. Then play the game!

Rules

You need: One counter for each student; one dice for each group.

How to play: Put your counters on START. Take turns to throw the dice, move your counter and read the instructions on the square. The first student to get to FINISH is the winner.

Grammar and Vocabulary

squares: The first student to land on a Grammar or Vocabulary square answers question 1. If the other students think your answer is correct, you can stay on the square. If the answer is wrong, move back to the last square you were on. The second student to land on the same square answers question 2. If a third or fourth student lands on the same square, he/she can stay on the square without answering a question.

Talk about squares: If you land on a Talk about square, talk about the topic for 20 seconds. Another student can check the time. If you can't talk for 20 seconds, move back to the last square you were on. If a second or third student lands on the same square, he/she also talks about the same topic for 20 seconds.

End of Course Review



Pair and Group Work: Student/Group A



a Work with your partner. Ask questions about cards A, B and C. Write the names and countries. Don't look at your partner's cards.

Card A. What's her name? How do you spell that? Where's she from?



- **b** Answer your partner's questions about cards D, E and F.
- c Check your answers and spelling with your partner.

2A 13 p17

a Work on your own. Guess the things your partner has got, but don't talk to him/her. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in the *your guess* column.

	your guess	your partner's answer
1.6		
1-10		
		NO. 00 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10

- **b** Look at the pictures. Write questions with you. Have you got a mobile?
- **c** Work with your partner. Ask and answer your questions. Put a tick or a cross in the *your partner's answer* column. Are your guesses correct?
- **d** Work with a new partner. Tell him/her five things your first partner has/hasn't got.

1B 12 p11

a Work on your own. Look at the hotel conference list. Write yes/no questions to check the information in pink on the list (Mr = Mrs =).

Is Mrs Ramos a teacher?

b Work with your partner. Take turns to ask your questions from **a**. Tick () the correct information. Change the wrong information.

Is Mrs Ramos a teacher?

No, she isn't. She's a doctor.

 Compare answers with another student A.

Mrs Ramos isn't a teacher. She's a doctor.

Conference Guest List

name	job	nationality	room
Mrs Ramos	a teacher	Mexican	216
Mr Demir	a manager	Turkish	112
Mr Wong	an actor	Japanese	204
Mrs Ivanova	a teacher	Russian	307
Mr Fisher	a mechanic		
er vernek-sekin		Australian	209
Mrs Fisher	a lawyer		
Mr Bruni	a builder		
Mrs Bruni	a musician	Italian	108

2C 13 p21

a You are a customer. Choose one of these films. Buy two tickets from your partner. Fill in the times and the prices for your film. You start.

48 Hours	Time:	£	
Three Long Years	Time:	3	
Two Weeks on Sunday	Time:	£	

b You are a ticket seller. Look at the times and prices of the films at your cinema. Sell tickets to your partner. Your partner starts.

Today's **films**

Children £8		
9.35		
8.25		
7.10		

c Do a and b again. Buy tickets for different films. Change the number and type of tickets you buy.

3B 10 p27

a Work on your own. Choose the correct words in phrases 1–5.

		name	name
1	watch TV every/in evening		
2	do sport <i>in/on</i> Saturdays		
3	go to bed after midnight in/at the week		
4	go to concerts in/at the weekends		
5	eat out at/every week		

- **b** Make questions with you with phrases 1-5 in a.
- 1 Do you watch TV every evening?
- **c** Ask other students in the class your questions. Try to find two people who answer *yes* for each question. Write their names in the table.
- **d** Tell the class about the people in your table. *Kristina and Michiko watch TV every evening.*

4B 9 p35

Jo is 29 and she's a lawyer. In her free time she watches TV, goes shopping and reads a lot. On Saturday evenings she usually goes to the cinema or eats out – she loves Chinese food. She doesn't like sport and she hates football. Her favourite music is rock and she also likes jazz. She likes animals but hasn't got any pets.



11C 10 p93

a Work on your own. Find these places on the map on p93. Don't tell your partner.

the cinema (2) The Pizza Place (6) a petrol station (11)

- **b** Work with your partner. You are at *You are here* on the map. Ask for directions to these places:
- a burger restaurant, the theatre, the school.

 When you find the place, check the number on the map with your partner. Don't look at your partner's map.

 You start.

Excuse me. Is there a burger restaurant near here?

5A III p41

a Work on your own. Write questions with you or your about when you were thirteen.

		you	your partner
1	/ happy at school? Were you happy at school?	erfield t	
2	Who / best friend?	a putani	
3	/ good at languages?		
4	What / favourite food?		Neg do
5	What / favourite TV programme?		

- **b** Write your answers in the you column.
- Work with your partner. Ask and answer your questions. Write your partner's answers in the table.
- **d** Tell another student about you and your partner when you were thirteen.

I was happy at school when I was thirteen, but Paola wasn't.

6C iii p53

a Work on your own. Read about the news stories. Check you understand all the words.

Big storm

Mexico 13 people died

Man who found 1 million dollars

under the kitchen floor gave money to a hospital

Tourists missing in Africa

Sahara desert lost for 2 weeks other tourists found them – they're OK now

Man tries to post ma

A woman who tioned about t' on Monday me in the sleepy v witness said the man was in his

b Work with your partner. Take turns to tell each other about the news stories. Use these phrases.

Did you hear/read about ...? No, what happened?

No, where was it? Oh, that's good. Oh no, that's terrible.

Oh, dear. Are they OK? You're joking! Really?

4B 10 c p35

MARK I like Kim very much and we like a lot of the same things. We both go to the cinema a lot and we both really like animals. But she doesn't like the same music as me and she hasn't got a TV – I don't believe that! Yes, I'd like to see her again. She's very beautiful.

KIM Sorry, I don't like Mark very much. He talks about football and TV programmes all the time and I don't like watching TV. Also, we don't like the same music – and music's very important to me. I don't want a second date with him. Sorry.

7B 10 p59

a Work with a student from group A. Describe the picture. Use the phrases in bold.

There's a cat in the picture.
There's some fruit on the table.
There are nine eggs in the fridge.
There are some pizzas on the table.

b Make questions to ask a student from group B about his/her picture. Use the phrases in bold.

Is there a cat in the room?

Are there any eggs in the fridge?

How many bananas are there?

How much milk is there?

- Work with a student from group B. Don't look at your partner's picture. Ask and answer questions about the pictures. Find twelve differences.
- **d** Work with your partner from group A. Compare answers.



8A 12 p65

a Work with a student from group A. Look at the picture. What are the people doing? What are they wearing?

Kevin's talking on the phone.

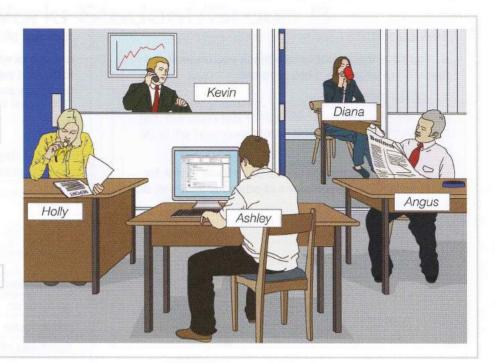
He's wearing a jacket, shirt and tie.

b Work with a student from group B. Don't look at his/her picture. Ask and answer questions. Find ten differences in the pictures.

What's Kevin doing?

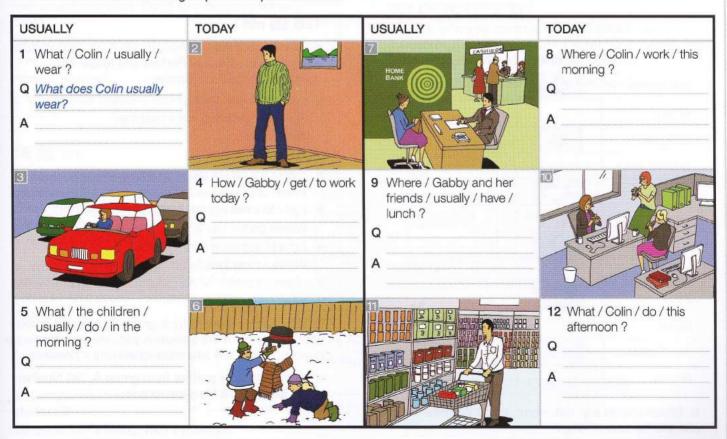
What's he wearing?

c Work with a student from group A. Did you find the same differences?



8B 9 p67

- a Work on your own. Write the questions (Q).
- **b** Work with a student from group B. Look at the pictures. Take turns to ask and answer your questions. Write the answers (A). You start.
- c Work with a student from group A. Compare answers.



10A III p81

- a You have these problems. Check you understand them. Then write one more problem.
- 1 I can't sleep at night.
- 2 I forgot my best friend's birthday.
- 3 I hate my job, but I need the money.

4

b Work with students B and C. Take turns to ask for and give advice. Which piece of advice is the best, do you think?

(I think) you should ...

I can't sleep at night. What should I do?

Well, you shouldn't ...

Don't ...

10D 5 p87

a Work with your partner. Ask and answer questions about the weather in these places. Fill in the gaps in the table. You start.

What's the weather like in ... today?

It's ... and it's ... degrees.

The State of the S	weather	°C
Amsterdam	දා ර	6
Athens		
Bangkok	*	31
Buenos Aires		
Chicago	- =→	0
Helsinki		
London	್ಷ	2
Munich		
Paris	FOG	5
Rome	nelle de la company	
San Francisco	63	18
Sydney	A	

b Which places are: hot, warm, cold? Where's the best place to be today? Why?

11B III p91

Is Eric going to visit his

parents next weekend?

a Look at what Eric, Melanie, Jenny and Sam are going to do next weekend. Take turns to ask and answer *yes/no* questions and fill in the gaps in the table.

✓ Yes, he is.

✓ No, he isn't.

✓X He might.

	Eric	Melanie	Jenny and Sam
visit parents		1	
go for a run	1	-11-1-11-1	X
move house		X	
watch lots of TV	/X		X
go to a party		X	
play tennis	1		√x
stay in bed on Sunday		1	

b Who is going to have: a lazy weekend, a busy weekend, an active weekend?

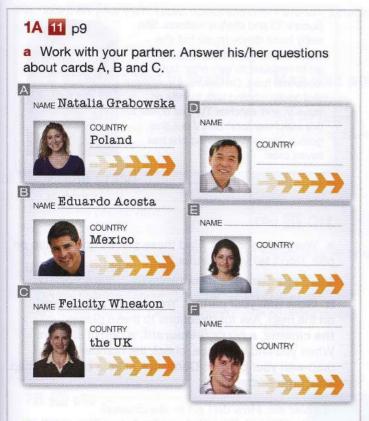
12B 10 p99

- **a** Work with a student from group A. Write questions with *you* in the Present Perfect and follow-up questions in the Past Simple.
- 1 / go / on a boat trip? Have you ever been on a boat trip? Where / go?

Where did you go?

- 2 / visit / the capital city of another country? Which city / visit?
- 3 / go / to a really good party? Whose party / be / it?
- 4 / meet / someone from the USA? Where / meet them?
- 5 / have / a pet? What / be / its name?
- **b** Work with a student from group B. Ask and answer your questions. If the answer is yes, ask your follow-up question. Then ask two more questions if possible.
- Work with your partner from group A. Tell him/her about student B's life experiences.

Pair and Group Work: Student/Group B



b Ask questions about cards D, E and F. Write the names and countries. Don't look at your partner's cards.

Card D. What's his name? How do you spell that? Where's he from?

c Check your answers and spelling with your partner.

2A 13 p17

a Work on your own. Guess the things your partner has got, but don't talk to him/her. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in the your guess column.

	your guess	your partner's answer
星、		al 2 ellubA
1		
00		

- **b** Look at the pictures. Write questions with *you*. Have you got a computer?
- **c** Work with your partner. Ask and answer your questions. Put a tick or a cross in the *your partner's answer* column. Are your guesses correct?
- **d** Work with a new partner. Tell him/her five things your first partner has/hasn't got.

1B 12 p11

a Work on your own. Look at the hotel conference list. Write yes/no questions to check the information in pink on the list (Mr = Mrs =).

Is Mr Demir a waiter?

b Work with your partner. Take turns to ask your questions from **a**. Tick (**/**) the correct information. Change the wrong information.

Is Mr Demir a waiter?

No, he isn't. He's a manager.

 Compare answers with another student B.

Mr Demir isn't a waiter. He's a manager.

Conference Guest List

name	job	nationality	room
Mrs Ramos	a doctor	Spanish	216
Mr Demir	a waiter	Turkish	112
Mr Wong	a police officer	American	204
Mrs Ivanova	a waitress	Russian	317
Mr Fisher	a mechanic	Dulliak	000
Mrs Fisher	an accountant	British	209
Mr Bruni	a builder	Italian 1	106
Mrs Bruni	an actress		

2C 13 p21

a You are a ticket seller. Look at the times and prices of the films at your cinema. Sell tickets to your partner. Your partner starts.

Today's **films**

48 Hours 7.20 Three Long Years 8.45 Two Weeks on Sunday 9.10

Adults £9.95 Children £7.35

b You are a customer. Choose one of these films. Buy two tickets from your partner. Fill in the times and the prices for your film. You start.

60 Seconds	Time:	£
Nine Months	Time:	£
A Day in the Life	Time:	£3

c Do a and b again. Buy tickets for different films. Change the number and type of tickets you buy.

3B 10 p27

a Work on your own. Choose the correct words in phrases 1–5.

	EPOENI MANDA ISTA	name	name
1	watch TV <i>in/on</i> the morning		
2	go shopping every/in Saturday		OUR
3	go for a drink at/on Friday evenings	1=13	
4	go to the cinema at/ every month		
5	work at/in the weekends		

- b Make questions with you with phrases 1-5 in a.
- 1 Do you watch TV in the morning?
- **c** Ask other students in the class your questions. Try to find two people who answer *yes* for each question. Write their names in the table.
- d Tell the class about the people in your table. Gabriela and Rudi watch TV in the morning.

4B 9 p35

Susie's 23 and she's a waitress. She really loves dance music but she doesn't like rock music. She doesn't go to restaurants very often but she loves fast food. On Saturday evenings she goes clubbing with friends or stays in and watches TV. She doesn't like watching sport on TV but she goes swimming a lot. And she has seven cats!



11C 10 p93

a Work on your own. Find these places on the map on p93. Don't tell your partner.

The Burger Bar (4) the theatre (7) the school (12)

b Work with your partner. You are at *You are here* on the map. Ask for directions to these places: **the cinema, a pizza restaurant, a petrol station**. When you find the place, check the number on the map with your partner. Don't look at your partner's map. Your partner starts.

Excuse me. How do I get to the cinema?

5A 11 p41

a Work on your own. Write questions with *you* or *your* about when you were thirteen.

and	a end spelling Will your pay	you	your partner
1	/ tall for your age? Were you tall for your age?		
2	Who / favourite teacher?		
3	/ good at sport?	nedamy	suff stoe
4	Who / favourite singer?		
5	Where / thirteenth birthday party?	EG ILION	a wady

- **b** Write your answers in the you column.
- Work with your partner. Ask and answer your questions. Write your partner's answers in the table.
- **d** Tell another student about you and your partner when you were thirteen.

I was tall for my age when I was thirteen, but Johann wasn't.

6C III p53

a Work on your own. Read about the news stories. Check you understand all the words.

3 students lost in Brazil

Amazon jungle lost for six days helicopter found them they're OK now

Plane crash

in Africa over 80 people died

Man who won the lottery

dog ate ticket gave dog to friend

Planes at airpo why the

Tuesday morn: a number of ke and have made to the press at "I see no reaso said Mr Dawk!

b Work with your partner. Take turns to tell each other about the news stories. Use these phrases.

Did you hear/read about ...? No, what happened?

No, where was it? Oh, that's good. Oh no, that's terrible.

Oh, dear. Are they OK? You're joking! Really?

4B 10 c p35

MARK Jo and I like some of the same things. We both like going to the cinema and eating Chinese food. But she talks about books and shopping *all* the time. We both like rock music, but she hates sport and I love it! No, I don't want to see her again. Sorry!

JO I really like Mark. He's very different from me, but that's a good thing, I think. I hate football, but he loves it. And he plays video games all the time and he never reads books. But yes, I'd like a second date with him. Definitely. He's very nice.

7B 10 p59

a Work with a student from group B. Describe the picture. Use the phrases in bold.

There's a TV in the picture.
There's some fruit on the table.
There are six eggs in the fridge.
There are some chairs in the room.

b Make questions to ask a student from group A about his/her picture. Use the phrases in bold.

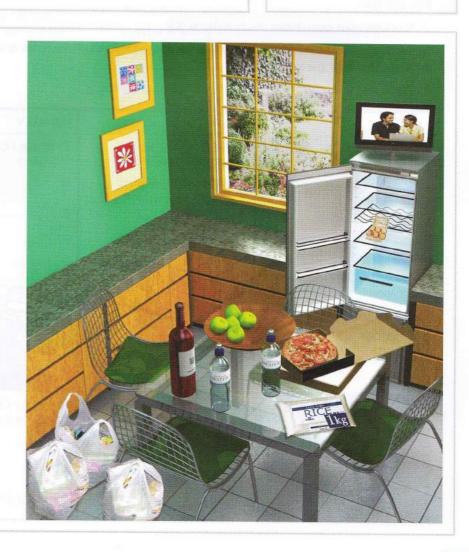
Is there a TV in the room?

Are there any eggs in the fridge?

How many apples are there?

How much water is there?

- c Work with a student from group A. Don't look at your partner's picture. Ask and answer questions about the pictures. Find twelve differences.
- **d** Work with your partner from group B. Compare answers.



8A 12 p65

a Work with a student from group B. Look at the picture. What are the people doing? What are the people wearing?

Kevin's sleeping.

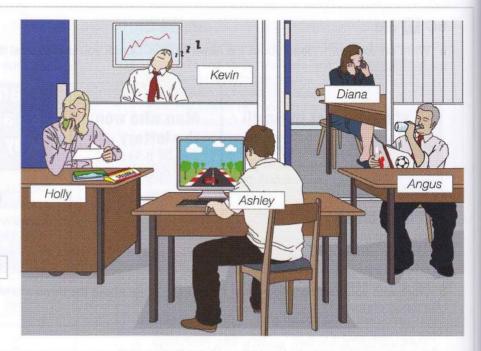
He's wearing a shirt and tie.

b Work with a student from group A. Don't look at his/her picture. Ask and answer questions. Find ten differences in the pictures.

What's Kevin doing?

What's he wearing?

• Work with your partner from group B. Did you find the same differences?



8B 9 p67

- a Work on your own. Write the questions (Q).
- **b** Work with a student from group A. Look at the pictures. Take turns to ask and answer your questions. Write the answers (A). Your partner starts.
- c Work with a student from group B. Compare answers.

USUALLY	TODAY	USUALLY	TODAY
	2 What / Colin / wear / today ? Q What's Colin wearing today? A	7 Where / Colin / usually / work ? QA	8
3 How/Gabby/usually/get/ to work? QA		9 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3	10 Where / Gabby and her friends / have / lunch today ?
5	6 What / the children / do / this morning? Q A	11 What / Colin / usually / do / in the afternoon? Q A	SAON TO THE PARTY OF THE PARTY

10A III p81

- a You have these problems. Check you understand them. Then write one more problem.
- 1 I want to practise my English more.
- 2 A friend bought me a present, but I hate it.
- 3 I need a holiday, but I haven't got any money.

4

b Work with students A and C. Take turns to ask for and give advice. Which piece of advice is the best, do you think?

I want to practise my English more. What should I do? (I think) you should ...

Well, you shouldn't ...

Don't ...

10D 5 p87

a Work with your partner. Ask and answer questions about the weather in these places. Fill in the gaps in the table. Your partner starts.

What's the weather like in ... today?

It's ... and it's ... degrees.

	weather	°C
Amsterdam	THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY O	
Athens	FOG	17
Bangkok		
Buenos Aires	6	30
Chicago		
Helsinki	Ç	0
London		**************************************
Munich	→, →	6
Paris		
Rome	္နာ	8
San Francisco		process constrained
Sydney	崇	22

b Which places are: hot, warm, cold? Where's the best place to be today? Why?

11B III p91

a Look at what Eric, Melanie, Jenny and Sam are going to do next weekend. Take turns to ask and answer yes/no questions and fill in the gaps in the table.

✓ Yes, she is.

Is Melanie going to visit her parents next weekend?

X No, she isn't.

✓X She might.

Additions	Eric	Melanie	Jenny and Sam
visit parents	X		√x
go for a run	***************************************	×	
move house	×		1
watch lots of TV	***************************************	1	T
go to a party	1		/X
play tennis		×	
stay in bed on Sunday	×		×

b Who is going to have: a lazy weekend, a busy weekend, an active weekend?

12B 10 p99

- **a** Work with a student from group B. Write questions with *you* in the Present Perfect and follow-up questions in the Past Simple.
- 1 / go / on holiday to a cold country? Have you ever been on holiday to a cold country? Where / go? Where did you go?
- 2 / learn / play a musical instrument? What instrument / learn?
- 3 / go / to a very expensive restaurant? What / eat?
- 4 / have / a really bad holiday? What problems / have?
- 5 / cook / a meal for more than six people? What / cook?
- **b** Work with a student from group A. Ask and answer your questions. If the answer is yes, ask your follow-up question. Then ask two more questions if possible.
- Work with your partner from group B. Tell him/her about student A's life experiences.

Pair and Group Work: Other exercises

4B 10 c p35

MARK Susie's very nice. We both like the same things – watching TV and doing sport. Also, she has lots of cats and I really like cats. She doesn't like rock music very much, but that's OK. Yes, I'd like a second date with her. Yes, please!

SUSIE Mark? Yes, I like him. We both do a lot of sport. I like swimming and he likes football. And we both watch a lot of TV and DVDs, so that's a good thing. Do I want to see him again? Yes, why not? Maybe we can go clubbing next time.

10A III p81

- a You have these problems. Check you understand them. Then write one more problem.
- 1 I can't find a job.
- 2 I need to find somewhere to live very quickly.
- 3 I want to learn more English vocabulary.

4

b Work with students A and B. Take turns to ask for and give advice. Which piece of advice is the best, do you think?

I can't find a job. What should I do? (I think) you should ...
Well, you shouldn't ...

Don't ...

3D 2 b p30

Are you an early bird or a night owl?

- 1 a 1 point b 2 points c 3 points
- 2 a 2 points b 1 point c 3 points
- 3 a 3 points b 1 point c 2 points
- 4 a 3 points b 2 points c 1 point
- 5 a 2 points b 1 point c 3 points
- 6 a 1 point b 2 points c 3 points

6-9 points:

You're definitely an early bird. You probably get up very early and do lots of things before lunchtime. But you're probably not a good person to go to an all-night party with!

10-13 points:

You're not a night owl or an early bird – so you're probably an afternoon person! You probably get up early in the week and then sleep a lot at the weekend.

14-18 points:

You're definitely an night owl. You probably go out a lot in the evening and watch TV late at night. But you're probably not a good person to have breakfast with!

5B 11 p43

- a Work on your own. Choose five to eight of these events in your life. Write the year/month when these things happened on a timeline.
- born
- brother/sister born
- start/leave school
- move to a new school
- start learning English
- go to your first concert/football match
- start/leave university
- meet your first girlfriend/boyfriend
- move to a different town/city
- meet your husband/wife

- start your first job/a new job
- get married
- have a child
- meet your best friend

b Work with your partner. Take turns to tell each other about your timeline. Ask questions to get more information.

c Tell another student three things about your partner's life.



BORN IN ...

NÓW

1A p8

a Find twelve countries (→↓).

R	E	B	R	Α	Z	1	D	Α
G	Е	R	М	Α	N	Υ	R	R
		S					U	
K	1	Т	Α	L	Y	0	S	Е
F	R	Α	Ν	C	E	L	S	Ν
L	Α	R	U	S	Α	Α	1	Т
L	0	Ν	С	Н	1	Ν	Α	1
Т	U	R	K	Ε	Υ	D	W	N
Α	U	S	Т	R	Α	L	1	Α

- b Write the nationalities.
 Brazil → Brazilian
- Fill in the gaps with 'm, 're, are or 's.
 - A What1's your name?
 - B My name² Ali.
 - A Where ³ you from?
 - B I4 from Egypt.
 - A Where 5 they from?
 - B They⁶ from Australia.
 - A What ⁷ their names?
 - B His name⁸ Jason and her name⁹ Kylie.
 - A Hi, Jo. How ¹⁰_____you?
 - B I11 fine, thanks. And you?
 - A I12 OK, thanks.
- 3 Choose the correct words.
 - 1 What's you/(your) name?
 - 2 It's she/her dictionary.
 - 3 We/Our 're Japanese.
 - 4 My/I 'm from Turkey.
 - 5 It's he/his computer.
 - 6 They're/Their Spanish.
 - o They ter their opanish.
 - 7 You're/Your in room C.
 - 8 It's/Its an MP3 player.
 - 9 What are they/their names?
 - 10 We/Our names are Colin and Henry.
 - 11 Where's you/your book?
 - 12 We/Our 're students and Peter's we/our teacher.

- 1B p10
- Fill in the gaps in these jobs with a, e, i, o or u. Then put a or an in the boxes.

1	a la wy	/er			
2	d c	t_r			
3	ms	_ C	n		
4	w	tr_ss			
5	cc	nt	nt		
6	m r	_ g _ r			
7	ng	_ n	r		
8	p _ l	се	ff	C	r
9	mc	h_n_	С		
10	cl	n_r			
11	s	S S	S	st	nt
12	t	ch r			

- Make these sentences negative.
 Write correct sentences.
 - 1 Julia Roberts is Polish. Julia Roberts isn't Polish. She's American.
 - 2 Leonardo DiCaprio is an accountant.
 - 3 David and Victoria Beckham are from Spain.
 - 4 Pepsi and Coca-Cola are British companies.
 - 5 Sydney is in the USA.
 - 6 Ferraris are German cars.
 - 7 Liverpool and Manchester are in Australia.
- a Fill in the gaps in these questions with Am, Are or Is.

1	Are	you a student?
2		she an actress?
3		they Argentinian?
4		I in room 201?
5		it an English hotel?
6		he from Mexico?
7		we in room B?

b Write positive and negative short answers for the questions in **6a**.

you from London?

1 Yes, I am. No, I'm not.

1C p12

- Write questions with your for these answers.
 - 1 Jones. What's your surname?
 - 2 It's Anna.
 - 3 I'm British.
 - 4 67, West Road, London.
 - 5 SE13 7GR.
 - 6 My mobile number's 07954 362313.
 - 7 It's 020 7946 0840.
 - 8 jane22@webmail.com.
- **1D** p14
- 8 Write the plurals.
 - 1 a camera cameras
 - 2 a surname
 - 3 a watch
 - 4 a dictionary
 - 5 a dress
 - 6 a pencil
 - 7 a tooth
 - 8 a woman
 - 9 a man
 - 10 an address

Progress Portfolio 1

Tick the things you can do . in English.

I can introduce people.
I can say countries and nationalities.
I can say and understan

- I can say and understand the numbers 0–100.
- l can talk about jobs.
- I can ask for, give and understand personal information (name, etc.).
- I can ask people to repeat things.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 1.



2A p16

Write the adjectives. Then write their opposites.

1	ewn	new	old
2	epahc	C	е
3	lamis	S	b
4	swol	S	f
5	lygu	u	b
6	ysea	е	d
7	uogny	У	0
8	dogo	g	b
9	leayr	е	L
10	ghrit	r	W

- Choose the correct words.
 - 1 She've/('s)got an old bike.
 - 2 We haven't/hasn't got a car.
 - 3 They've/'s got a new DVD player.
 - 4 Jo haven't/hasn't got a camera.
 - 5 I've/'s got a new laptop.
 - 6 He haven't/hasn't got an MP3 player.
 - 7 They haven't/hasn't got a very big car.
 - 8 You've/'s got a nice watch.
 - 9 She haven't/hasn't got a pen.
 - 10 We've/'s got a beautiful cat.
- Fill in the gaps with have, has, haven't or hasn't.

A	have you got a computer?
В	Yes, I have.
Α	Mona got a laptop?
В	No, she
Α	you got a dictionary?
В	Yes, I
Α	they got a new DVD player?
В	No, they
Α	he got a camera?
В	Yes, he
Α	we got his address?
В	Yes, we
Α	Bob got a car?
В	No, he
	B A B A B A B A B A

B Yes, they ____.

they got a big TV?

2B p18

- Complete these sentences.
 - 1 Your mother's son is ... your brother
 - 2 Your mother's daughter is ...
 - 3 Your son's children are ...
 - 4 Your mother's brother is ...
 - 5 Your father's sister is ...
 - 6 Your father's parents are ...
 - 7 Your mother's brother's daughter is ...
- Look at these sentences. Does 's mean is, has or possessive?
 - 1 Jack's got a camera. 's = has
 - 2 She's got an MP3 player.
 - 3 Mark's unemployed.
 - 4 This is Ed's baby.
 - 5 She's from Prague.
 - 6 That's Pam's husband.

2C p20

6 a Put these times in order.

twenty to ten 1 five to ten quarter past ten ten past ten quarter to ten ten to ten twenty-five past ten half past ten

b Write the times in **6a** in a different way.

twenty to ten → nine forty

Read this conversation at a cinema. Fill in the gaps with these words.

Can	Here	course	Thanks
film	tickets	That's	starts
time	much		

- A ¹ Can I have two ² for 24 Hours, please?
- B Yes, of ³
- A How 4_____ is that?
- **B** ⁵_____£18, please.
- A ⁶ you are. What ⁷ is the film?
- B It 8 at six fifty.
- A Right. 9 a lot.
- B You're welcome. Enjoy the

2D p22







Look at pictures 1–6. Complete the words. Then fill in the gaps with these prepositions.

	by	under	in	behind
L	in fro	ont of	on	
1	The	e plant's	by	the door.
2	The	e plant's		the b
3	The	e plant's		the d
4	The	e plant's		the s
5	The	e plant's		the
6	The	e plant's		the

Progress Portfolio 2

Tick the things	you	can	do
in English.			

1	I can use adjectives with very
	to describe things.
	# HOUSE NOW - \$ YOR # A COMP # SHOULD THE OWNER OWNER OWNER.

I can talk about personal possessions.

I can talk about families.

prices.

I can find information in adverts for cinemas, etc.

I can buy a ticket at the cinema.

I can say where things are in a room.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 2.



3A p24

Read about Vince's day. Fill in the gaps with these verbs.

live	work	finish	start
go	leave	get	
get u	up hav	/e (x2)	

- 1 | live in Brighton.
- 2 at 7.00.
- 3 | home at 8.30.
- 4 | work at 9.00.
- 5 | in a school.
- 6 l lunch in a café.
- 7 | work at 5.30.
- 8 I home at 6.00.
- 9 I dinner at home.
- 10 I to bed at 11.30.
- Complete these questions with you for the words/phrases in bold in 1.

1	Where do you live ?	
2	What time	7
3	When	?
4	What time	7
5	Where	?
6	Where	7
7	When	7
8	What time	7
9	Where	7
10	When	7

3B p26

Match a word/phrase in A to a word/phrase in B.

mora/prila	33, 5.
Α	В
go —	your family
visit \	in
do	— out
stay	sport
have	the cinema
go to	coffee with friends
go —	concerts
watch	- shopping
eat	friends
go to	a drink
phone	TV
go for	out

a Fill in the gaps with in, on or at.

- 1 I get up early in the week.
- 2 They work _____ the weekend.
- 3 Gavin and Ruby eat out _ Friday evenings.
- 4 My brother and I go to the cinema Sundays.
- 5 Tom and Bob work night.
- 6 I phone my mum and dad the mornings.
- 7 My parents have lunch one o'clock.
- 8 We do sport _____ the afternoon.
- 9 I phone my son _ Saturdays.
- 10 I get up half past six.

b Make the sentences in **4a** negative.

1 I don't get up early in the week.

3C p28

What do you say on these special days?

- 1 your sister's birthday Happy birthday!
- 2 a friend's wedding
- 3 1st January
- 4 the birth of a baby
- 5 a wedding anniversary

6 Complete the words in this conversation.

- A What ¹s hall we ²g Maya for her birthday?
- B What 3a a new watch?
- A No, I don't ⁴t so. She's got a nice watch.
- B Why ⁵d we get her a radio?
- A ⁶M . But she's got an MP3 player.
- B I know! ⁷L get her a camera.
- A Yes, ⁸t a good ⁹i Where's your credit card?
- B My credit card?!

3D p30

Make sentences with these words.

- 1 Sundays / work / I / usually / on . I usually work on Sundays.
- 2 I / in / never / the afternoon / sleep.
- 3 on / I / Saturday / at home / sometimes / 'm / evenings .
- 4 often / go out / friends / the week / in / I / with .
- 5 always / My / birthday / remember / friends / my .
- 6 New Year's Eve / on / hardly ever / are / at home / My parents .
- 7 tired / evenings / usually / 'm / on / very / Friday / I.

8 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Do you know he/(him)?
- 2 Is she/her a doctor?
- 3 They email we/us a lot.
- 4 How do you know she/her?
- 5 I don't understand they/them.
- 6 Why don't they/them phone I/me?

Progress Portfolio 3

Tick the things you can do in English.

>	I can describe my
	daily routine.

- I can talk about my free time activities and say when I do them.
- I can ask people about their routines and free time.
- l can use phrases for special days.
- l can ask for, make and respond to suggestions.
 - I can say how often I do things.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 3.



- 4A p32
- Match the verbs to the words/ phrases.

go	to music
go	- running
listen	photos
take	swimming
go play read listen	tennis to the radio clubbing books or magazines
go	video games
play	sport on TV
go to	cycling
watch	the gym

- 2 a Add -s, -es or to the verbs in these sentences.
 - 1 My son watch es TV a lot.
 - 2 Barry take good photos.
 - 3 Paula go out on Saturdays.
 - 4 lan and Liz work at home.
 - 5 My sister live in the USA.
 - 6 Our class finish_at 8.30.
 - 7 Luke's parents like jazz.
 - 8 Rob watch sport on TV.
 - 9 We go out on Fridays.
 - 10 She do a lot of sport.
 - b Make the sentences negative.
 - 1 My son doesn't watch TV a lot.
- 4B p34
- Look at the pictures. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of these words/phrases.

3	hate like is like lik	/are		
1 00	He lo	ves	cats.	d
2 🕚	We		C	ooking.
з 🙂	She _			dogs.
4 🕛	1		jazz	.
5 😐	I think	enni	s	
6 💮	They _			football.
7	Не		s	hopping

for clothes.

- a Make questions with these words.
 - 1 What / do / does / he ? What does he do?
 - 2 work / does / Where / he?
 - 3 like / rock music / he / Does ?
 - 4 What / she / on Friday nights / does / do ?
 - 5 What / like / she / does / food ?
 - 6 she / watch / Does / on TV / sport ?
 - **b** Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verb in brackets and complete the short answers. Then match answers a–f to questions 1–6.
 - a He teaches English. (teach) 1
 - **b** She clubbing, (go)
 - c She Italian food. (like)
 - d He in Spain. (work)
 - e Yes, she . . She football and tennis. (love)
- 4C p36
- Betty is in a restaurant. Fill in the gaps with these phrases.

to order can I have
I'd like Would you like (x3)
the bill to drink
a glass of that's all

WAITER Would you like

1 to order now?

burger and chips, please.

W What would you like

3

B I'd like ⁴ red wine, please.

w 5 anything else?

B No, 6, thanks.

w 7_____a dessert?

B Yes, 8 the apple pie, please?

W 9 tea or coffee?

B No, thanks. Can I have

w Certainly, madam.

- 4D p38
- 6 a Find fifteen words for food and drink. (→↓).

0	Н	Е	E	S	E	F	0	Т
B	Υ	Т	0	Α	S	Т	F	0
Α	E	F	R	U	1	T	1	М
N	E	G	G	S	L	K	S	Α
Α	В	R	Ε	Α	D	E	Н	Т
N	Т	Ε	Α	G	М	X	Α	0
					R			
М	Е	Α	Т	S	L	L	W	S
М	1	L	K	0	K	J	Α	М

b Which words are countable (C)? Which are uncountable (U)?

cheese U banana C

- Fill in the gaps with a, an or -.
 - 1 Do you have sugar?
 - 2 Can I have croissant?
 - 3 I don't like olives.
 - 4 Would you like biscuit?
 - 5 I love ____ chicken soup.
 - 6 I always have egg sandwich for lunch.

Progress Portfolio

Tick the things you can do in English.

3	I can talk about other people's
	routines and free time activitie

- l can say what I like and don't like.
- I can ask and answer questions about people I don't know.
- I can say and understand words for food and drink.
- l can order something to eat and drink in a restaurant.
- can offer things to people.
 - I can ask people for things.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 4.



5A p40

- Write the opposites of these adjectives.
 - ill well
- 6 tall
- happy
- 7 friendly
- 3 hot
- borina
- lucky
- 9 fantastic
- different
- quiet
- Choose the correct words.
 - I(was)/were at home yesterday.
 - 2 Jack and I was/were in Rome last week.
 - The film was/were amazing!
 - 4 My uncle was/were a doctor.
 - 5 I wasn't/weren't here last year.
 - 6 He wasn't/weren't very well.
 - 7 You wasn't/weren't here on Monday.
 - 8 They wasn't/weren't born in the UK.
- Make questions with these words.
 - 1 were / night / you / Where / last ? Where were you last night?
 - 2 they / at home / yesterday / Were / afternoon ?
 - 3 the party / Was / son / your / at ?
 - 4 at / were / 5 p.m. / you / Where ?
 - 5 born / were / Where / you?
 - 6 they / When / born / were?
 - 7 in / he / Was / born / London ?

5B p42

- a Choose the correct verbs.
 - 1 (have/write children
 - 2 win/make a film
 - 3 meet/study English
 - 4 leave/meet school
 - 5 make/become famous
 - 6 become/write a book
 - 7 win/meet a lot of money
 - 8 move/leave house
 - b Write the Past Simple of the correct verbs in 4a.

have → had

5 a Read about Beryl, Jason's grandmother. Fill in gaps 1-8 with the Past Simple of these verbs.

be	meet	(x2)	have
go	live	move	get

11 was	born ain 1954	and my
family 2	bin Liver	
1973 3		and, Albert
	rty and we 4	married
don May	/ 1 st 1975.	

We⁵ our first child, Matt, ein 1977. Matt 6 to Spain on holiday in 1997 and 7 ^ghis wife there. They ⁸ Bristol hin 1999 and they have four children now.

- b Make questions for the words/phrases a-h in bold.
- a When was Bervl born?
- b Where did her family live?

5C p44

Match the verbs to the phrases.

go —	for the weekend
write	to a party
clean	an email
go away	the car
do	for a walk
uo	IUI a Walk
have	with friends

- Choose the correct response in these conversations.
 - 1 A I won £50,000 yesterday.
 - B Oh, nice./(Wow!)
 - 2 A Tim and I went to Venice last week.
 - B What a shame./Really?
 - 3 A I was ill last weekend.
 - B Oh, dear./Oh, nice.
 - 4 A I met the President of the USA last month.
 - B You're joking!/Oh, dear.
 - 5 A I stayed in all weekend.
 - B Oh, right./What a shame.
 - 6 A I went clubbing last night.
 - B Oh, dear./Oh, nice.

5D p46

8 a Write the missing letters in these adjectives.

1	cr	ow d	ed	6	C	_	n
2	d_	rt _		7	е	pt	
	ex			8	r_	С	
4	p	r		9	b	r	d

5 dan er us 10 s f

b Match the opposite adjectives

crowded, empty

- 9 Choose the correct words.
 - 1 Sorry, I can't come today. I'm (too)/quite busy.
 - 2 Let's go to that restaurant. It's too/really nice.
 - 3 He's a very/too important man.
 - Mike is always quite/too lucky.
 - Kim's husband is too/quite rich.
 - That film was too/quite long. I went to sleep after 5 hours!
 - 7 This book is really/too interesting.

Progress Portfolio 5

Tick the things you can do in English.

>	I can describe people
	and places.

I can talk about things that happened in my life.

I can ask questions about things other people did in the past.

I can say and understand vears.

I can talk about what I did last weekend.

I can respond to people's news and ask follow-up questions.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 5.



6A p48

Fill in the gaps with these words.

website	ge ge	et	blog	3	emails
online	dov	vnlo	ad	cha	at
WiFi	use	se	arch	eng	ine

- 1 I don't have a favourite website .
- 2 Paul sends lots of every day.
- 3 Did you ____ my email?
- 4 This café has
- 5 I _____ the internet for my food shopping.
- 6 Do you always use the same
- 7 My kids _____ a lot of videos and music.
- 8 I _____ to my sister online every day.
- 9 I often go and read my friend's .
- Fill in the gaps with didn't, wasn't or weren't.
 - 1 I didn't go to bed late last night.
 - 2 I ____ watch TV yesterday.
 - 3 My parents _____ go to university.
 - 4 I at home last week.
 - 5 My parents _____ born in the UK.
 - 6 I like my first school.
 - 7 I have a holiday last year.
 - 8 I late for work last week.
- Fill in the gaps with the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets, did or didn't.
 - A ¹ *Did* you *go out* yesterday evening? (go out)
 - B Yes, I² . I³ to see my sister. (go)
 - A What 4______ you _____ ? (do)
 - B We 5 a DVD. (watch)
 - A 6 you it? (enjoy)
 - B No, I⁷ . It ⁸ terrible! (be)
 - A ⁹_____you____at your sister's? (stay)
 - B No | ¹⁰ . | ¹¹ home. (come)

- **6B** p50
- Choose the correct words.
 - 1 I didn't send/(get) your text. Can you send/get it again?
 - Remember to turn on/turn off your phone before the film starts.
 - 3 What was the last app/GPS you downloaded?
 - 4 Which programme/channel is the football on?
 - 5 I need a new charge/battery for my mobile.
 - 6 Do you charge/record your phone every night?
 - 7 Can you turn on/turn off the TV? My favourite programme/ channel is on now.
- Make sentences with these words.
 - 1 ago / I / two / him / days / met . I met him two days ago.
 - 2 born / He / eighteenth / the / in / century / was .
 - 3 night / out / I / last / went .
 - 4 days / arrived / She / ago / ten .
 - 5 2011 / to Paris / My parents / in / went .
 - 6 in / famous / was / the eighties / His father.
- 6 Choose the correct words.
 - 1 Excuse me. Can/Could you make video calls on this mobile?
 - 2 You can't/couldn't go online in 1970.
 - 3 You can/could buy mobiles in the 1990s.
 - 4 Sorry, we can't/couldn't come to your party next week.
 - 5 Look! You can/could see my house from here.
 - 6 He can't/couldn't go to work last week.
 - 7 Can/Could you watch TV on your new mobile?
 - 8 Two years ago you can't/ couldn't buy these phones.
 - 9 You can/could use Google in 1998
 - 10 Help! I can't/couldn't swim!

6C p52

7 Fill in the gaps with these words.

	hear	read	where	joking
	died	what	Really	terrible
Α		ou ¹ <i>he</i> crash?	ar abou	t that
В	No, 2	2	was it?	

- A In the USA. 310 people ³
 B Oh no, that's ⁴
- A Did you ⁵ about the woman who won the lottery?
- B No, 6 happened?
- A Her baby chose the numbers.
- B 7_____ ? You're 8_____!

6D p54

Fill in the gaps with a, an or the.

- 1 I've got an old car.
- 2 I went to ____ cinema at ___ weekend.
- 3 What happens at ____ end of game?
- 4 I'd like to buy ____ new hat.
- 5 This book is about ____ young doctor and ____ old woman. ___ doctor is rich, but ___ woman is very poor.

Progress Portfolio 6

Tick the things you can do in English.

>	I can talk about the internet,
North Control	my mobile phone and TV.
1	Lean eav when things

- I can say when things happened in the past.

 I can talk about things I can do
 - in the present and could do in the past.
- I can understand simple news stories.
 - I can talk about the news and respond to news stories.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 6.

..........



7A p56

Find 12 places in a town or city. $(\rightarrow\downarrow)$.

S	В	M	Α	R	K	E	T
Т	Α	U	Ε	Н	D	Α	0
Α	R	S	Р	0	G	В	S
Т	Н	Ε	Α	Т	R	Ε	Q
L	0	U	R	Е	W	Α	U
0	U	М	K	L	L	C	Α
Ν	S	F	L	Α	Т	Н	R
Z	Ε	K	R	0	Α	D	Ε

- Read about Catford, in London. Fill in the gaps with There's, There are, There isn't or There aren't.
 - 1 (/) There's a theatre in Catford.
 - 2 (X) a cinema.
 - two stations.
 - a square.
 - (1) a nice park.
 - (X) any museums.
 - (1) a lot of shops.
 - (X) any big hotels.
- a Choose the correct words.
 - 1 (Is)/Are there a theatre in Catford?
 - 2 Is/Are there any big hotels?
 - 3 Is/Are there a cinema?
 - 4 Is/Are there any museums?
 - 5 Is/Are there any shops?
 - 6 Is/Are there a park?
 - 7 Is/Are there a square?
 - b Look again at 2. Write short answers for the questions in 3a.
 - 1 Yes, there is.

7B p58

- Which word is the odd one out?
 - 1 table chair (balcony)
 - 2 cooker bed fridge
 - 3 bathroom kitchen shower
 - sink desk washbasin
 - bath toilet living room
 - cupboard sofa armchair

- Fill in the gaps with some, any, a or an.
 - A I'm hungry. Have you got 1 any food?
 - B Yes, there's 2 bread and cheese. I can make you 3 sandwich. 4
 - A Have you got 4 tomatoes?
 - B No, I haven't, but I've got eggs. Would you like egg sandwich?
 - A Yes, that sounds nice.
 - B Would you like ⁷ ___ drink?
 - A Yes. 8 milk, please. And have you got 9 fruit? banana, maybe?
 - B There are 11 oranges, but there aren't 12 bananas.
 - A OK. I'll have 13 orange.

7C p60

- Write the vowels (a, e, i, o, u) in these shops.
 - 1 abookshop
 - 2 a ch m st's
 - 3 a sh sh p
 - 4 ab k r's
 - 5 ab nk
 - 6 a k _ sk
 - 7 ap_st _ff_c_
 - 8 an ws g nt's
 - 9 a b tch r's
 - 10 ad p rtm nt st r
 - 11 as p rm rk t
 - 12 a cl_th_s sh_p
- Write the words for these things.

















1	a map	5	
2		6	
3		7	

Fill in the gaps with these words.

Can over I'll else help Have that's one receipt any

- A Hello. 1 Can I help you?
- B Yes. 2 you got 3 maps of London?
- A Yes, they're 4
- B Oh, yes. 5 have this _, please.
- A Anything ⁷
- B No. 8 all, thanks. Thanks for your 9
- A OK. Here's your 10
- **7D** p62

3

Write the colours and clothes.



1	a pink jacket	4	
2		5	

 5	
•	

Progress Portfolio 7

Tick the things you can do in English.

>	I can describe my town and
Access to the second	other places I know.

- I can describe my home and the things in it.
- I can ask about other people's towns and homes.
- I can buy things in a shop.
- I can talk about clothes.
 - I can say colours.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 7.



8A p64

Fill in the gaps with these words.

phone report notes company contract meeting customers

- 1 Can you answer the *phone* , please?
- 2 I work for a _____in Rome.
- 3 They signed the _______ yesterday.
- 4 I'm going to a now
- 5 Lisa, can you take at the meeting, please?
- 6 I write to a lot of _____every day.
- 7 Did you write this ______
- Put the verbs in the Present Continuous.

MUM Jim, can you help me?

JIM Sorry, Mum. I¹ 'm doing my
homework. (do)

MUM What² your sister ? (do)

JIM She³ shower, (have)

MUM And what ⁴ your brothers ? (do)

JIM They⁵ football.

(play). But Dad ⁶ anything. (not do)

DAD Yes, I am. I ⁷
the paper. (read)
MUM Not any more!

8B p66

- a Write these travelling verbs/phrases.
 - 1 ylf fly 2 leccy 3 vired
 - 4 kawl 5 og yb ratin
 - 6 og yb occah 7 og yb buet
 - **b** What is another way to say the verbs/phrases in **3a**?

fly \rightarrow go by plane

- a Put the verbs in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.
 - 1 Where does Ben work ? (work)
 - 2 What Sue at the moment? (do)
 - 3 Which TV programmes you every week? (watch)
 - 4 What you today? (wear)
 - 5 Where _____ you usually on Friday evenings? (go)
 - 6 What ____ Dave and Rita now? (do)
 - 7 What time your lesson usually ? (finish)
 - 8 What ____ Ben ___ at the moment? (do)
 - **b** Write the answers for questions 1–8 in **4a**.
 - 1 work / in a bank
 He works in a bank.
 - 2 take / the children to school
 - 3 watch / sport on TV
 - 4 wear / jeans and a T-shirt
 - 5 usually / go / clubbing
 - 6 have / lunch
 - 7 usually / finish / at 4.30
 - 8 walk / to work

8C p68

Read this phone conversation.

Fill in the gaps with these words.

help you Can I Speaking
It's I got I'll call Hold on
Is that call you back Call me

KEVIN Hello. Can I ¹ help you ?

BILL Hello. ² Kevin Doyle?

- K 3
- B Hi, Kevin. ⁴ Bill. ⁵ speak to Jo, please?
- K 6 a moment, I'll get her.
- JO Hello?
- B Hi, Jo. 7 your message.
- J Oh, hi, Bill. I've got a meeting now. Can I 8 ?
- B Sure. 9 on my mobile.
- J OK. 10 you later. Bye.

8D p70

Write words/phrases for these indoor and outdoor activities.













1	drive	4	
2	******	5	
3		6	

- Choose the correct words.
 - A Tina's husband is a 1 good/ well cook.
 - B And he can play tennis really ²good/well.
 - A He also speaks three languages ³fluent/fluently.
 - But he isn't a very ⁴careful/ carefully driver. I don't feel ⁵safe/ safely when he's driving.
 - A So there's one thing he does 6bad/badly!

Progress Portfolio

Tick the things you can do in English.

money	
?	I can talk about things people
	do at work.

- I can describe things that are happening now.
- I can talk about transport.
- I can understand simple phone messages.
- can have a conversation on the phone.
- l can understand a simple letter.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 8.



9A p72

- Choose the correct verbs.
 - 1 have/(stay) with friends
 - 2 travel/hire a car
 - 3 go to/go the beach
 - 4 stay/hire in a hotel
 - 5 have/travel around
 - 6 go on/go camping
 - 7 hire/go skiing
 - 8 go on/go a boat trip
 - 9 hire/travel a bike
 - 10 go/have a picnic
 - 11 go on/go to holiday
 - 12 have/go a good time
- Complete these sentences with the infinitive of purpose. Use these verbs.

get	watch	buy	tell	
visit	study	chat		

- 1 I went to the baker's to get some bread.
- 2 We stayed at home ___ the football.
- 3 I'm going to Valencia _____ Spanish.
- 4 I went to L.A. a friend.
- 5 She often goes online to her friends.
- 6 He's going to the supermarket some biscuits.
- 7 Jack phoned his wife _ her the good news.

9B p74

- Write the letters in these natural places.
 - 1 the sea
 - 2 a w _ _ d
 - 3 an i_l__d
 - 4 a f _ r _ t
 - 5 a m __nt __n
 - 6 a h___ |
 - 7 a l_k_
 - 8 a r _ v ___
 - 9 the co__t_ys___e
 - 10 the d_s__t

- Write sentences with comparatives.
 - Russia / cold / Egypt
 Russia is colder than Egypt.
 - 2 Stockholm / safe / New York
 - 3 Mumbai / big / Paris
 - 4 India / cheap / Australia
 - 5 Tokyo / expensive / Bangkok
 - 6 São Paolo / hot / Montreal
 - 7 Beijing / crowded / Berlin
 - 8 Spain / small / Argentina
 - 9 Mexico City / busy / Quito
 - 10 Public transport in London / good / public transport in Los Angeles

9C p76

Write the animals.

1	dirb	b <i>ird</i>
2	olni	L
3	aesnk	S
4	semou	m
5	nceckih	C
6	bratbi	r
7	woc	C
8	largoil	g
9	komyen	m
10	grite	t
11	ephse	8
12	lwfo	W

- Read the conversation and choose the correct verb form.
 - A What do you want ¹do/(to do) tomorrow?
 - B I'd like ²go/to go shopping in town.
 - A We did that last weekend. I'd rather ³go/to go to the beach.
 - B OK, let's ⁴do/to do that. Where would you like ⁵go/to go?
 - A Can we ⁶go/to go to Angel Beach? It's really nice.
 - B Yes, good idea. Let's ⁷go to/ go there. Do you want ⁸drive/ to drive?
 - A No, I don't think so. I'd rather 9take/to take the train.
 - B OK. See you tomorrow.

9D p78

- Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in brackets, verb+ing or the infinitive with to.
 - A Would you like ¹ to go out (go out) this evening?
 - B I'm sorry, I can't. I need ² (finish) this report.
 - A I really enjoy ³ (watch) The Simpsons.
 - B Oh, I stopped ⁴ (watch) it years ago.
 - A I'd really love ⁵ (go) to San Francisco.
 - B Yes, me too. But I really hate 6 (fly)!
 - A Do you like ⁷ (go) to the cinema?
 - B No, I don't, but I love 8 ____ (watch) DVDs.
 - A Last night I decided ⁹_ (leave) my job.
 - B Wow! What do you want 10 (do) now?

Progress Portfolio 9

Tick the things you can do in English.

>	I can talk about things I do)
	on holiday.	

- I can give reasons why I do things.
- I can describe and compare places I know.
- I can find important facts in tourist brochures.
- I can discuss and plan a day out.
- I can understand a simple magazine article.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 9.



10A p80

- Choose the correct words.
 - 1 I want to get /have fit.
 - 2 Can you carry/spend the shopping, please?
 - 3 How often do you do/have the housework?
 - 4 I'd like to have/spend a bath.
 - 5 I need to do/spend some exercise.
 - 6 I don't like taking/doing lifts.
 - 7 Joe's washing/doing the car.
 - 8 Did you spend/do lots of money?
 - 9 | take/get stressed at work.
 - 10 He got on/got off the bus and walked home.
- Fill in the gaps with these imperatives.

Don't oat	Turn off	Call		
Don't forget	Don't v	work	Tell	

- 1 Don't eat biscults every day.
- 2 him on his mobile.
- 3 too hard.
- 4 her to go away.
- 5 the TV and go to bed.
- 6 to send him a present.
- Fill in the gaps in these frequency expressions.
 - 1 once a week = every 7 days
 - 2 every 6 hours = a day
 - 3 twice a year = ____ 6 months
 - 4 12 times a year = a month
 - 5 every 12 hours = a day
- Look at these tips for a healthy life. Fill in the gaps with should or shouldn't and these verbs.

do	work	drink
sleep	eat	walk

- 1 You should do some exercise.
- 2 You ____ chips every day.
- 3 You 7 days a week.
- 4 You to the shops.
- 5 You _____ so much coffee.
- 6 You for 7 or 8 hours every night.

- **10B** p82
- Write the vowels (a, e, i, o, u) in these words. Do they describe appearance (A) or character (C)?
 - 1 attractive A
 - 2 lazy C
 - 3 b ___t_f_l
 - 4 f_nny
 - 5 _ v _ rw ___ ght
 - 6 s | |f sh
 - 7 g_n_r__s
 - 8 sl_m
 - 9 k_nd
 - 10 th_n
 - 11 g __d-l __k _ ng
 - 12 h_rd-w_rk_ng
- a Make questions with these words.
 - 1 Who / Joe / is? Who is Joe?
 - 2 like / What / look / he / does ?
 - 3 doing / he / like / does / What?
 - 4 he/'s/like/What?
 - **b** Match questions 1–4 with answers a–d.
 - a He likes travelling.
 - b He's very kind and quite shy.
 - c He's my brother.
 - d He's tall and he's got fair hair.

10C p84

a Find 10 words for health problems and parts of the body (→↓).

C	0	L	D	Т	G	Α	Q
F	В	В	J	0	1	L	L
0	Е	Α	C	0	U	G	Н
0	Α	С	W	Τ	Р	Ε	F
Т	Χ	K	0	Н	K	G	L
Н	Ε	Α	D	Α	С	Н	Ε
W	L	R	Μ	С	D	W	G
Q	S	М	1	Н	Α	L	Р
S	1	C	K	E	M	W	Ε

- **b** Match the words in **7a** to these phrases.
- 1 I've got (a) ... cold
- 2 | feel ...
- 3 my hurts

Fill in the gaps with these words.

wreng ache better take sore don't terrible matter shouldn't dear painkillers

- A What's 1 wrong?
- B I feel 2
- A Oh, 3 . What's the
- B I've got a stomach 5 and a 6 throat. Have you got any 7 ?
- A Sorry, no, but you ⁸ be at work. Why ⁹ you ¹⁰ the day off?
- B Yes, good idea.
- A I hope you get 11_____ soon.

10D p86

9 What's the weather like? Write sentences with *It's*









1	It's cold.	5	
2		6	
3		7	

Progress Portfolio 1

Tick the things you can do in English.

- I can ask for and give advice.
 I can talk about people's
- appearance and character.
- I can talk about health.
 - I can talk about the weather.
 - I can understand a simple magazine article.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 10.



11A p88

Fill in the gaps with these verbs.

-	have	mo	ve	work	get
-	do	lose	eat	sto	0
1	ha	ve ah	nolida	y/fun	
2	*	a	comp	uter co	ourse/
	mor	e exer	cise		
3	*********	ch	ocola	ite cak	e/
	swe	et thin	gs		
4	-	a r	new jo	ob/fit	
5		ha	rd/les	SS	
6		wo	rking	at we	ekends/
	smo	king			
7		ho	use/t	o anot	her
	COLL	ntry			

Fill in the gaps with the correct form of be going to and these verbs.

8 three kilos/weight

	leave watch get stay buy have
1	lan (+) 's going to leave his job.
2	l (+)a new car.
3	Tina (–) married in May.
4	We (–)a holiday this year.
5	They (+)in a hotel.
6	I (-) TV tonight.

- Make questions with these words.
 - going to / you / tomorrow evening / are / do / What ? What are you going to do tomorrow evening?
 - 2 next year / a holiday / have / you / Are / going to ?
 - 3 you / tomorrow afternoon / be / are / going to / Where ?
 - 4 do / after class / going to / What / you / are?
 - 5 Are / study / going to / you / next year / English?
 - 6 your family / go / Where / going to / on holiday / 's?

11B p90

- Choose the correct verbs.
 - 1 do/get an exam
 - 2 pass/get a degree
 - 3 fail/start college
 - 4 revise/take for an exam
 - 5 go/pass to university
 - 6 get/leave school
 - 7 go/pass an exam
 - 8 start/get some qualifications
 - 9 fail/revise an exam
 - 10 pass/get a job
 - 11 go/take an exam
 - 12 go to/pass school
- Read the email. Fill in the gaps with might or the correct form of be going to.

To: Alice	Fisher
Hi Alice	
I finished my	exams today!
I 1 'm going	to celebrate this evening,
but I'm not su	re what I want to do.
l ²	have dinner with friends
or I ³	go to a party. This
weekend Trev	or and I 4
drive to Bright	ton – it's his sister's
77.	aturday. On Sunday we
5	go for a long walk or we
6	go shopping in town.
And of course	we ⁷ see
Hamlet on Tu	esday - I've got the tickets!
Love Henriett	а

11C p92

- 6 Choose the correct words in these conversations.
 - A Excuse me. ¹Where/How do I get to the station?
 - B Go along this road and ²turn/ take left. Then go ³over/in the bridge and turn right. ⁴That's/ /t's New Road. The station is on ⁵my/your left, ⁶next/opposite the hotel.
 - A Great, thank you very much.

Language Summary 11 p151

- A Excuse me. ⁷Is/Are there a supermarket near ⁸there/here?
- B Yes, there's one ⁹at/in New Road. Go ¹⁰along/over this street and turn right. Go ¹¹past/ along the chemist's and the supermarket is ¹²in/on the right. You ¹³can't/don't miss it.
- A Excuse me. ¹⁴Where's/What's the post office?
- B It's ¹⁵under/over there, ¹⁶next/ opposite to the bank.
- A Oh, yes. I ¹⁷am/can see it. Thanks a lot.

11D p94

Fill in the gaps with the correct form of book, stay, rent or get.

1	I need to b	ook a hotel room.
2	My brother the moment	with us at
3	How do I _	to your place?
4	He always _	flights online.
5	Last year we in Spain.	e a house
6	I love	in hotels.
7	We	nome last night.
8	Are you goir	ng toa car?

Progress Portfolio 11

	n English.
L	I can ask other people abou their plans.
L	I can talk about exams and studying.
	l can find information in holiday adverts.
	l can ask for, give and understand directions.
	I can understand a simple email.

Tick the things you can do

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 11.



12A p96

- Write the numbers.
 - a nought point four 0.4
 - b a hundred and thirty-two
 - c seven million
 - d six thousand seven hundred
 - e three point seven six
 - f five hundred thousand
 - g forty-one thousand, three hundred and seventeen
- Write the superlatives.

1	slim	slimmer
2	easy	54 54 1114
3	boring	
4	big	
5	short	
6	beautiful	
7	crowded	
8	difficult	
9	funny	
10	safe	

- Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative of the adjective in brackets. Use the with the superlative if necessary.
 - 1 This is the most expensive hotel in the city. (expensive)
 - 2 My sister is younger than me. (young)
 - 3 I know a restaurant than this one. (good)
 - 4 What's ____ country in the world? (hot)
 - 5 I'm person in my family. (tall)
 - 6 That's my son's __ shirt. (expensive)
 - 7 She's person I know. (happy)
 - 8 Where's place to have lunch near here? (good)
 - 9 Kath's than her sister. (attractive)
 - 10 That was da of the holiday. (bad)
 - 11 You look than you were last year. (thin)
 - 12 Which of these three bags is ? (heavy)

12B p98

Write the past participles.

1	be	been	7	see
2	study		8	write
3	have		9	visit
4	meet		10	work
5	stay		11	cook
6	lose		12	go

- Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect or Past Simple and complete the short answers.
 - A ¹ Have you ever been to Ecuador? (go)
 - B No, 1² , but 1³ to Chile. (go)
 - A When ⁴ you there? (ao)
 - B 1⁵ in 2009. (go)
 - A ⁶ you a good time? (have)
 - B Yes. It 7_____ fantastic! (be)
 - A ⁸ you ever as a waiter? (work)
 - B Yes, I ⁹ . In the Station Hotel.
 - A 10 you it? (enjoy)
 - B No, it 11 hard work. (be)
 - A When ¹² you there? (work)
 - B In 2010, after I ¹³ university. (leave)

12C p100

6 Read this conversation at an airport. Fill in the gaps with these words.

everyt	ning	will	in	have
See	boar	ding pa	ass	time
forget	tex	t		

MUM	Have you g	ot ¹ everything
AMY	Yes, I 2	, thanks.

- DAD Have you got your ³ A Yes, Dad. Here it is.
- M Well, have a good 4
- A Thanks, I 5
- D And don't ⁶ to send us a ⁷ when you get there.
- A Yes, of course. 8 you
 - three weeks. Bye!

7 Do the puzzle. Find the message.

	¹F	L	1	G	Н	Т			
					2		S	L	
	³ A					Ε			
	4		S	S				Ø.	R
				⁵ B			S		
			⁶ L			G			Ε
			⁷ В						
⁸ P				Р			Т		
		W					W		
			¹⁰ G						
		"B				D			G
¹² C				K		Ν			
		1/22			13	Α		K	

- 1 Did you have a good ... ?
- 2 14C is an ... seat.
- 3 The opposite of depart.
- 4 On a plane you're a
- 5 Pack your
- 6 Have you got any hand ... ?
- 7 You can ... tickets online.
- 8 Can I have your ..., please?
- 9 14A is a ... seat.
- 10 My plane leaves from ... 7.
- 11 Here's your ... pass.
- 12 Go to the ... desk.
- 13 You do this before you travel.

Progress Portfolio 1

Tick the thing:	s you can do
in English.	

>	I can say big and sma	
	numbers.	

I can compare three or more things.

I can talk about my experiences.
I can ask other people about

their experiences.

I can ask and answer questions at the airport.

l can say goodbye.

What do you need to study again? See Self-study DVD-ROM 12.



Language Summary Welcome

VOCABULARY

0.1 Numbers 0-20 1 p6

0 = zero	7 = seven	14 = fourteen
1 = one	8 = eight	15 = fifteen
2 = two	9 = nine	16 = sixteen
3 = three	10 = ten	17 = seventeer
4 = four	11 = eleven	18 = eighteen
5 = five	12 = twelve	19 = nineteen
6 = six	13 = thirteen	20 - twenty

0.2 The alphabet 5 p6

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii

Jj Kk Ll Mm Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr

Ss Tt Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

TIP • ss = double s, A = capital A, a = small a

0.3 Things in the classroom 8 p7



a table



a chair



a book



a pencil



a pen



a dictionary



a CD player



a TV



a DVD player



a computer

0.4 Days of the week



Friday Saturday Sunday

Thursday

REAL WORLD

0.1 Introducing yourself





Nice to meet you.

You too.

0.2 Classroom instructions



Open your book.



Look at the photo on page 11.



Do exercise 6 on your own.



Look at the board.



Work in pairs.



Work in groups.



Fill in the gaps.



Compare answers.



Listen and check.



Listen and practise.



Match the words to the pictures.



Ask and answer the questions.

0.3 Names



What's your name?

(My name's/It's) Deniz.

What's your first name?



What's your surname?

Fuentes.

How do you spell that?

F-U-E-N-T-E-S.

0.4 Saying goodbye



Goodbye/Bye, Olga.

Goodbye/Bye. See you on Tuesday.

Yes, see you.

Language Summary 1



Countries, nationalities and languages

1A 3 p8

countries I'm from	nationalities	languages I speak
Brazil Australia Argentina the USA Germany Italy Mexico Russia Egypt	Brazilian Australian Argentinian American German Italian Mexican Russian Egyptian	Portuguese English Spanish English German Italian Spanish Russian Årabic
the UK Spain Poland Turkey	British Spånish Polish Turkish	Ēnglish Spānish Polish Turkish
China Japan	Chinese Japanese	Chinese Japanese
France	French	French

1.2 Jobs 1B 3 p10

Match the jobs to pictures a-p.

1 a a manager /ˈmænɪdʒə/ 9 a musician /mju:ˈzɪʃa 2 a doctor 10 a teacher 3 an engineer 11 a student 4 a sales assistant 12 a housewife 5 a waiter/a waitress 13 an accountant 6 a cleaner 14 a lawyer /ˈlɔɪə/ 7 a police officer 15 a builder 8 an actor/an actress 16 a mechanic			1-	
an engineer a sales assistant a student a sales assistant a housewife a waiter/a waitress a cleaner a cleaner a police officer a student a housewife a naccountant a lawyer /ˈlɔɪə/ a builder	1	a månager / mænidʒə/	9	a musician /mju:ˈzɪʃən/
4 a sales assistant 12 a housewife 5 a waiter/a waitress 13 an accountant 6 a cleaner 14 a lawyer / lɔɪə/ 7 a police officer 15 a builder	2	a doctor	10	a teacher
5 a waiter/a waitress 13 an accountant 6 a cleaner 14 a lawyer /ˈlɔɪə/ 7 a police officer 15 a builder	3	an engineer	11	a student
6 a cleaner 14 a lawyer /ˈlɔɪə/ 7 a police officer 15 a builder	4	a såles assistant	12	a housewife
7 a police officer 15 a builder	5	a waiter/a waitress	13	an accountant
	6	a cleaner	14	a lawyer /ˈlɔɪə/
8 an actor/an actress 16 a mechanic	7	a police officer	15	a builder
	8	an åctor/an åctress	16	a mechånic

- In the Language Summaries we only show the main stress in words and phrases.
- You can check the phonemic symbols (/æ/, /dʒ/, etc.) on p167.

TIPS • We use a or an with jobs: I'm a doctor, not I'm doctor.

- We can also say *I'm unemployed*. not *I'm an unemployed*. and *I'm retired*. not *I'm a retired*.
- What do you do? = What's your job?

13 a and an 1B 4 p10

We use a with nouns that begin with a consonant sound. (The consonants are b, c, d, f, etc.): I'm a student. We use an with nouns that begin with a vowel sound. (The vowels are a, e, i, o, u): He's an actor.

TIP • We use a with nouns that begin with a /j/ sound: a university /ju:nr'v3:srti/.

Numbers 20-100 1C 11 p12

20 = twenty	26 = twenty-six	50 = fifty
21 = twenty-one	27 = twenty-seven	60 = sixty
22 = twenty-two	28 = twenty-eight	70 = seventy
23 = twenty-three	29 = twenty-nine	80 = eighty /'erti,
24 = twenty-four	$30 = thirty / \theta 3:ti/$	90 = ninety
25 = twenty-five	40 = forty	100 = a hundred

Personal possessions 1D 11 p14

Do you remember these things? Check on p14.

a diary	an umbrella	a coat	a låptop
a wallet	a bag	a bike/bicycle	a dress
an MP3 player	shoes	a radio	an ID card
a mobile	a camera	a suitcase	false teeth
a watch			

TIP • We can say a mobile, a phone or a mobile phone (US: a cell, a phone or a cell phone).

1.6 Plurals 1D 2 p14

singular	plural	singular	irregular plural		
	+ -s	a man	men		
a bag a wallet a suitcase	bags wållets suitcases	a woman a child a person	women children people		
	+-es	a tooth	teeth		
a watch a dress	watches dresses	TIP • We	also add -es to		
	-y → -ies	words end	ding in -s, -sh, -x		
a diary	diaries	and -z: bu	s → buses, etc.		

























DVD-ROM 1





this, that, these, those 1D 7 p15

	here 🌷	there 🥌
singular	this (umbrella)	that (camera)
plural	these (watches)	those (false teeth)

- This, that, these, those go before be in sentences: Those are my shoes.
- This, that, these, those go after be in questions: Is that your bag?

GRAMMAR

be (1): positive and Wh- questions 1A 6 p9

POSITIVE (+)		WH- QUESTIONS (?)
I'm from Spain.	(= I am)	Where are you from?
You're in room 6.	(= you are)	Where's he from?
He's from Italy.	(= he is)	Where's she from?
She's from Brazil.	(= she is)	What's your name?
It's Carlos Moreno.	(= it is)	What are your names?
We're from Australia.	(= we are)	Where are they from?
They're from the UK.	(= they are)	185X /A

TIPS • you and your are singular and plural.

. We can write Where's, What's, etc. but not Where're, What're, etc.

Subject pronouns and possessive adjectives

1A 9 p9

subject pronouns	1	you	he	she	it	we	they
possessive adjectives	my	your	his	her	its	our	their

TIPS • We use subject pronouns with verbs: He's a doctor. We live in Paris.

• We use possessive adjectives with nouns: My name's Hanif. It's her bag.

be (2): negative, yes/no questions and short answers 1B B p11

NEGATIVE (-)

We make negatives with not.

I'm not a teacher.

You/We/They aren't from the USA. (aren't = are not) He/She/It isn't famous. (isn't = is not)

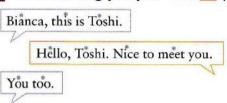
YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS	
Am I late?	Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Are you from Spain?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
Is he/she a musician?	Yes, he/she is.	No, he/she isn't.
Is it Japanese?	Yes, it is.	No, it isn't.
Are we in room 5?	Yes, we/you are.	No, we/you aren't.
Are you from New York?		No, we aren't.
Are they French?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

TIPS • We can also make negatives and negative short answers with 's or 're + not: She's not famous. You're not from the USA. No, you're not. No, she's not, etc.

· We can't say Yes, you're. Yes, I'm, etc.

REAL WORLD

1.1 Introducing people 1A 2 p8



TIP • When a person says Nice to meet you. we can say You too., And you. or Nice to meet you too.

1.2 Asking for personal details 1C 5 p13

What's your surname, please? What's your first name? What's your nationality? What's your address? What's your postcode? What's your mobile number? What's your home number? What's your email address?

TIPS • We can say surname or last name.

- In phone numbers 0 = oh or zero and 11 = double one.
- We can say What's your home number? or What's your landline (number)?
- In email addresses we say: . = dot, @ = at, A = capital A.
- postcode (UK) = zip code (US)
- We say How old are you? to ask about age: A How old are you? B I'm fifty. not I have fifty. or I'm fifty years.
- If you're not married, you can say you're single:

A Are you married? B No, I'm single.

 We say years old for things: My bike's ten years old. not My bike's ten.

1.3 Asking people to repeat things

1C 🔽 p13

I'm sorry? Could you say that again, please? Could you repeat that, please?

Language Summary 2

VOCABULARY



2.1 Adjectives (1)

2A 1 p16

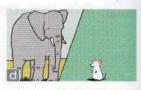
Match the adjectives to nictures a-n

Pic	raioo a ii.	
1	new	old
2	good	bad
3	cheap	expensiv
4	beautiful	ugly
5	easy	difficult
6	big	small
7	early	late
8	fast	slow
9	young	old
10	right	wrong
11	nice	m
12	great	
13	important	

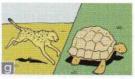


























Adjective word order and very

2A 2 p16

2.3 Family

fåvourite

- We put adjectives after the verb be: She's late.
- We put adjectives before a noun: It's a small bag.

2B 2 p18

- We put very before adjectives: It's a very difficult question.
- Adjectives aren't plural with plural nouns: Those are my new shoes.

of male	Q female	male and female	
fåther (dad)	mother (mum)	pårents	
son /san/	daughter /'dɔ:tə/	children (kids)	
bröther /'brʌðə/	sister		
hůsband	wife (plural: wives)	-	
gråndfather	gråndmother	gråndparents	
gråndson	grånddaughter	gråndchildren	
ůncle	aunt /a:nt/	-	
cousin /ˈkʌzən/	cousin	cousins	

TIPS • parents = mother and father only; relatives = all the people in your family.

- brothers = men/boys only. We ask: How many brothers and sisters have you got?
- a boyfriend/girlfriend = a man/woman you have a romantic relationship with.
- We use How many (+ noun) to ask about a number: How many children have you got?
- · Dad, mum and kids are informal words.

2.4 Time words 2C 11 p20

60 seconds = 1 minute /minit/	7 days = 1 week
60 minutes = 1 hour	12 months = 1 year
24 hours = 1 day	

TIP . We say two and a half hours not two hours and a half

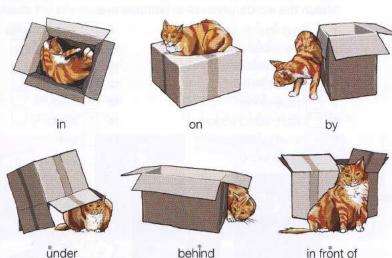
2.5 Things in a house 2D 11 p22

Match the words to all in the nicture

IVICIL	cii iiie words ii	Ja-i III III	e picture.			
1	a mirror	5	a door	9		a plant
2	a desk	6	a bookcase	10		a coffee tab
3	a sofa	7	a window	11	h	a lamp
4	a cårpet	8	the floor	12		curtains



Prepositions of place 2D 2 p22



GRAMMAR

2.1 have got: positive and negative 2A 5 p16

POSITIVE (+)	NEGATIVE (-)		
I've got (= I have got) you've got	I haven't got (= I have not got) you haven't got		
he's got (= he has got) she's got	he hasn't got (= he has not got) she hasn't got		
it's got	it hasn't got		
we've got	we haven't got		
they've got	they haven't got		

TIP • We use any with plural nouns in negatives: He hasn't got any DVDs.

22 have got: questions and short answers

2A 10 p17

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS		
Have I got any letters today? Have you got a camera?	Yes, you have. Yes, I have.	No, you haven't. No, I haven't.	
Has he got a DVD player?	Yes, he has.	No, he hasn't.	
Has she got a DVD player?	Yes, she has.	No, she hasn't.	
Has it got a DVD player?	Yes, it has.	No, it hasn't.	
Have we got any CDs?	Yes, we/you have.	No, we/you haven't	
Have they got any cheap TVs?	Yes, they have.	No, they haven't.	

TIPS • We use any with plural nouns in yes/no questions: Have you got any DVDs?

. We don't use got in short answers: Yes, I have not Yes, I have got.

WH- QUESTIONS

What have you got in your bag? What has he/she got in his/her bag?

Possessive 's 2B 5 p19

 We use a name + 's (Pam's, etc.) or a noun + 's (husband's, etc.) for the possessive: Jill is Pam's sister. My husband's name is Nick.

TIPS . For plural nouns, we write s': My parents' names are Mary and Ben.

- 's can mean the possessive, is or has: Ben is Pam's father. ('s = possessive) Jill's her sister. ('s = is) She's got one brother. ('s = has)
- · We use Whose to ask which person/people a thing belongs to: A Whose mobile phone is it? B It's Nick's.

REAL WORLD

Telling the time 2C 2 8 p20



one o'clock /



five past two / two oh five



ten past three / three ten



quarter past



twenty past four / four fifteen five / five twenty



twenty-five past six / six twentyfive



half past seven / seven thirty



twenty-five to eight / seven thirty-five



twenty to nine / eight forty



quarter to ten / nine forty-five



ten to eleven / ten fifty



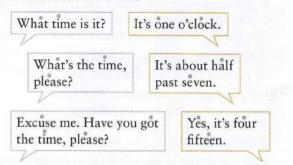
five to twelve / eleven fifty-five

TIPS • We can say quarter past/to six or a quarter past/to six. We don't say fifteen past six.

• For other times, we say minutes: nineteen minutes past six not nineteen past six.

2.2 Talking about the time 2C 5 p20

QUESTIONS ABOUT THE TIME



PREPOSITIONS OF TIME

- We use at for times: My English class is at ten.
- We use from ... to for length of time: My son's class is from seven to nine thirty.

TIP • a.m. = 0.00–12.00 midday/noon = 12.00 p.m. = 12.00–24.00 midnight = 24.00

2.3 Saying prices 2C 8 p21

2.4 Buying tickets at the cinema 2C 11 p21

CUSTOMER

TICKET SELLER

Can I have (two) tickets for (*The Brothers*), please? (Two) tickets for (*A New Day*), please. One adult and one child.

How much is that?

How much are the tickets?

Here you are. What time is the film?

Right. Thanks a lot.

Thank you very much.

Yes, of course.

That's (£23), please. (£11.50) for adults and (£8.45) for children. So that's (£19.95), please.

It starts at (seven fifteen).

It starts in (two minutes).

You're welcome. Enjoy the film.

TIPS • We say How much is + this, that or a singular noun: How much is that? How much is the exhibition?

• We say How much are + these, those or a plural noun: How much are these? How much are the tickets?

Language Summary 3

VOCABULARY

Daily routines 3A 11 p24

Match the words/phrases to pictures a-o.

get up finish classes go to bed leave home 10 have breakfast /brekfast/ 3 aet home 11 have lunch 4 work 12 5 have dinner h stůdv 13 start work /ws:k/ 6 14 sleep start classes 7 live



finish work































3.2 Free time activities (1) 3B 11 p26 Match the phrases to pictures a-I. stay in go shopping go out (a lot) 2 phone friends/my family 3 eat out 9 visit friends/my family go for a drink 4 10 have coffee with friends go to the cinema 5 do (a lot of) sport go to concerts 12 watch (a lot of) TV/DVDs CAFÉ EMA TIPS • We say: Do you want to go for a drink? not Do you want to drink

something?

- We can say do sport or play sport: I play sport at the weekend.
- We can say a lot of + noun or lots of + noun: I do a lot of sport. I watch lots of DVDs.
- go to the cinema (UK) = go to the movies (US)

3.3 Time phrases with on, in, at, every 3B 🛐 p27

on	in	at	every
+ day	+ part of the day	+ time	week
Saturday	the morning	nine o'clock	day
Mondays	the afternoon	half past three	month
Monday mornings	the evening		night
Sunday afternoon		night	morning
	the week	the weekend	Sunday afternoon

TIPS • We can use the singular or plural of days, parts of the day and the weekend to talk about routines: I stay in on Monday/Mondays. I go out in the evening/evenings. I work at the weekend/weekends.

- We don't use a plural with every: every week not every weeks.
- We say in the morning/afternoon/evening but at night.

3.4 Months 3C 3 p28 **January** February August March September October April November December

TIP • We use in with months: My birthday's in December.

1st	first	17 th	seventeenth
2 nd	second	18 th	eighteenth
3rd	third	19 th	nineteenth
4 th	fourth	20 th	twentieth
5 th	fifth	21st	twenty-first
6 th	sixth	22 nd	twenty-second
7th	seventh	23 rd	twenty-third
8 th	eighth	24 th	twenty-fourth
9th	ninth	25 th	twenty-fifth
10 th	tenth	26 th	twenty-sixth
11 th	eleventh	27 th	twenty-seventh
12 th	twelfth	28 th	twenty-eighth
13 th	thirteenth	29 th	twenty-ninth
14 th	fourteenth	30 th	thirtieth
15 th	fifteenth	31st	thirty-first
16 th	sixteenth		um cy mot
3.6	Frequency	adverbs	3D 11 p30
always	öft	en	hardly ever
	ůsually	sometim	
00%			

Word order of frequency adverbs 3D 4 p30

- Frequency adverbs go after the verb be: I'm always happy and I have a lot of energy.
- Frequency adverbs go before other verbs: I sometimes get up before 9 a.m.

TIPS • We can use always, usually and often with negative verb forms: I don't often eat out.

· We can't use sometimes, hardly ever or never with negative verb forms: We don't sometimes watch TV.

3.1 Present Simple (1): positive (1/you/we/they) 3A 4 p24

- We use the Present Simple to talk about daily routines.
- The Present Simple positive is the same for I, you, we and they.

I get up at 4.30 in the morning. You get up very early. We start work at about 7.00.

They have an hour for lunch.

3.2 Present Simple (1): Wh- questions (I/you/we/they) 3A 9 p25

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What time	do	you	get up?	
When	do	you	have	lunch?
When	do	you	finish	work?
What time	do	you	get	home?
Where	do	you	have	dinner?

TIP • Present Simple questions are the same for *I*, you, we and they: Who do **I** ask? When do **we** start classes? What time do **they** have lunch?

3.3 Present Simple (2): negative (I/you/we/they) 3B 4 p26

In Present Simple negative sentences with I, you, we and they we use:

subject + don't (= do not) + infinitive

subject	auxiliary	infinitive	
1	don't	go out	on Saturday evening.
You	don't	work	in this office.
We	don't	stay in	at the weekend.
They	don't	watch	TV in the day.

Present Simple (2): yes/no questions and short answers (I/you/we/they)

3B 6 p27

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)				SHORT	
auxiliary subject infinitive				ANSWERS	
Do	you	eat out	a lot?	Yes, I do. No, I don't.	
Do	you	go	to concerts?	Yes, we do. No, we don't.	
Do	they	watch	TV a lot?	Yes, they do. No, they don't	

3.5 Subject and object pronouns 3D 6 p31 subject I you he she it we they

subject pronouns	1	you	he	she	it	we	they
object pronouns	me	you	him	her	it	us	them

TIP • In positive and negative sentences, subject pronouns go before the verb and object pronouns go after the verb: I often see him on Saturday. They don't usually call her in the morning.

REAL WORLD

3.1 Phrases for special days 3C 2 p28

a birthday /ˈbɜ:θdeɪ/

a wedding
the birth of a new baby

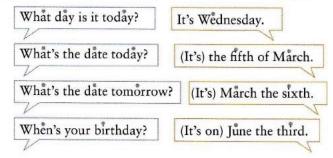
Happy birthday!

Congratulations!

a New Year's Eve party Happy New Year!

a wedding anniversary Happy anniversary!

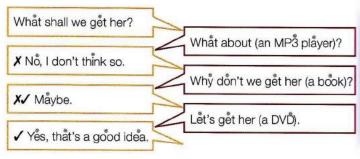
3.2 Talking about days and dates 3C 5 p28



TIPS • We say: **the** *fifth* **of** *March* or *March* **the** *fifth*. We write: 5th *March* or *March* 5th.

- We use on with dates: My birthday's on December 30th.
- In the UK, $3.7.17 = 3^{rd}$ July 2017 (day/month/year). In the USA, $3.7.17 = 7^{th}$ March 2017 (month/day/year).

3.3 Suggestions 3C 9 p29



TIPS • We can say get or buy: What shall we get/buy her?

• We use the infinitive after What shall we ...? and Let's ...: What shall we do tonight? Let's go to the cinema.

Language Summary 4



VOCABULARY

Free time activities (2)

4A 1 p32

Match the phrases to pictures a-l.

take photos

go to the gym 2

watch sport on TV

play video games

play tennis

read books or magazines 6

7 go cýclina

go swimming 8

go rűnning 9

go clübbing 10

listen to music 11

listen to the radio 12





















TIPS • We can say play video games or play computer games.

go cycling (UK) = go biking (US)

4.2 Things you like and don't like 4B ii p34

Match the words/phrases to pictures a-o.

reading football 2

tråvelling 3

4 cats

shopping for clothes 5

video games

7 animals

dåncing 8

9 cooking

dance music 10

rock music 11

12 iazz

Italian food 13

Chinese food 14

fåst food





DANCE

NIGHT





























like/love/hate 4B 2 p34

verb + verb+ing

4.4 Verb+ing

I love reading. I really like travelling.

I don't like shopping for clothes.

I hate cooking.

verb + noun

I love rock music. I like books.

I quite like Italian food. I don't like video games.

TIPS • We use enjoy + verb+ing to say we like doing something: I enjoy travelling.

4B 3 p34

- We don't use the to talk about things we like/don't like in general: I love books. (= books in general). He doesn't like cats. (= cats in general).
- We often use very much with like. We put it after the noun or verb+ing: I like reading very much. not Hike very much reading.

I love ... I really like ... I like ... 1 quite like is/are OK. I don't like ... I hate ...

4.5 Food and drink (1) 4C 2 p36



a pizza



a burger and chips (US: French fries)



a cheeseburger and chips



a glass of a bottle of white wine red wine





a bottle of still mineral water



a bottle of sparkling mineral water



a tuna salad



a chicken salad





fruit salad



of beer

vanilla, strawberry,





an egg mayonnaise sandwich



a cheese and tomato apple pie with cream sandwich





chocolate ice cream



4D 1 p38

Match the words to pictures a-y.

1	biscuits /'biskits/	14	cheese
2	milk	15	a banana
3	an apple	16	orange juice
4	rice	17	a croissant
5	yogurt /ˈjɒgət/		/ˈkwæsp/
6	sügar	18	tea
7	toast	19	jam
8	bread	20	meat
9	fish	21	fruit
10	eggs	22	cereal
11	coffee	23	őlives
12	sausages	24	tomåtoes
	/'spsid3iz/	25	vegetables
13	soup		/'vedʒtəblz/

TIPS • biscuits (UK) = cookies (US)

jam (UK) = jelly (US)

Countable and uncountable nouns 4D 5 p38

COUNTABLE NOUNS

- Countable nouns have a plural form: biscuits, apples.
- We use a or an with singular countable nouns: a biscuit, an apple.
- We don't use a or an with plural countable nouns: biscuits not a biscuits, apples not an apples.

UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

- Uncountable nouns aren't usually plural: milk not milks, rice not rices.
- We don't use a or an with uncountable nouns: milk not a milk, rice not a rice.

TIP • Some nouns can be countable and uncountable: I like coffee. (uncountable = coffee in general) Can I have a coffee, please? (countable = a cup of coffee)

Present Simple (3): positive and negative (he/she/it) 4A 5 p32

POSITIVE (+)

 In Present Simple positive sentences with he, she and it we add -s or -es to the infinitive.

He **plays** video games.

She **emails** him every day.

He watches lots of DVDs.

It starts at ten o'clock..

TIP • The verb have is irregular. We say he/she/it has, not he/she/it haves: He has tennis lessons every week.

NEGATIVE (-)

In Present Simple negative sentences with he, she and it we use:

subject + doesn't (= does not) + infinitive

subject	auxiliary	infinitive	
He	doesn't	like	the weather.
She	doesn't	talk	to him very often.
lt	doesn't	start	at ten thirty.

Present Simple (3) positive: spelling rules (he/she/it) 4A 6 p33

spelling rule	examples
most verbs: add -s	plays writes phones gets starts lives
verbs ending in -ch, -sh, -s, -ss, -x or -z: add -es	watches /'wntʃız/ finishes /'fɪnɪʃız/
verbs ending in consonant + y : - $y \rightarrow$ - ies	stud ies
the verbs go and do: add -es	goes does/dnz/
the verb have is irregular	has

Present Simple (4): questions and short answers (he/she/it) 4B 7 p35

QUESTIONS (?)

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	Annual An
What	does	she	do	in her free time?
	Does	she	watch	TV a lot?
	Does	she	like	films?
What (music)	does	she	like?	

• Present Simple questions are the same for he, she and it: Where does he live? What time does it start? Does she like football? Does it start at nine o'clock?

TIP • We sometimes use a noun with some question words (What, How many, etc.): What music do you like? How many children have you got?

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, he does.	No, he doesn't.
Yes, she does.	No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does.	No, it doesn't.

TIPS • We use **do** in questions with *I*, you, we and they. We use **does** in questions with he, she and it.

. We don't repeat the verb in short answers:

Yes, she does. not Yes, she likes.

No, she doesn't not No, she doesn't like.

4B 7 p35

We can use have or have got to talk about possessions and family:

She's got two dogs. = She has two dogs. I haven't got any children. = I don't have any children. Have you got a car? = Do you have a car?

We can only use have to talk about meals and other activities:

I don't have breakfast. not I-haven't get breakfast.
We often have coffee with friends. not We often have getcoffee with friends.

Do you want to have a game of tennis? not Do you want to have **got** a game of tennis?

REAL WORLD

4.1 Requests and offers 4C 7 p37

REQUESTS

We use I'd/We'd like ... and Can I/we have ... ? for requests (we want something).

I'd/We'd like a bottle of mineral water, please.

Can I/we have the bill, please?

OFFERS

We use Would you like ... ? for offers (we want to give something or help someone).

Would you like to order now?

What would you like to drink?

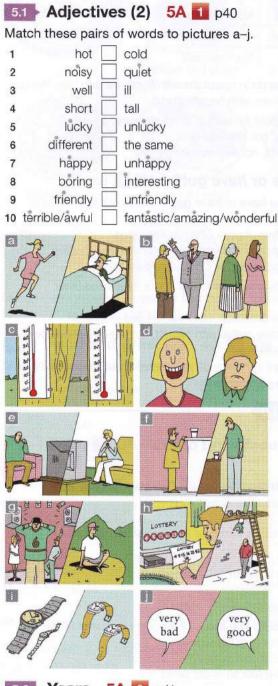
TIPS • I'd like = I would like; We'd like = We would like.

- We use a noun after Can I/we have ... ?: Can I have the bill, please?
- * We use a noun or the infinitive with to after Would you like ...? and I'd/We'd like ...: Would you like a dessert? I'd like to order now, please.
- the bill (UK) = the check (US)

Language Summary 5

VOCABULARY





5.2 Years 5A 9 p41

1835 = eighteen thirty-five

1900 = nineteen hundred 1990 = nineteen ninety

2000 = two thousand

2005 = two thousand and five

2018 = twenty eighteen

TIPS • We use in with years: I was born in 1990.

 2000–2009 = two thousand, two thousand and one, two thousand and two, etc.

• 2010-2099 = twenty ten, twenty eleven, etc.

5.3 Life events 5B 11 p42

leave school/university
meet my husband/my wife
get married/divorced
make a film/a lot of money
become a film director/famous

TIP • a film (UK) = a movie (US)

have children/a dream move house/to a different country study English/physics write a book/a letter win an Oscar/the lottery

5.4 Weekend activities 5C 11 p44

go for a walk go away for the weekend go away for a couple of days

clean the car have a great time clean the house have a bad cold do the washing go to a party

do your homework go to your parents' house for lunch

write an email stay with friends write a report stay at home all weekend

TIP . do the washing (UK) = do the laundry (US)

5.5 Adjectives (3)

5D 1 p46

Match these adjectives to pictures a-l.

- 1 __ bored /bo:d/
- crowded
 busy /'bizi/
- 4 Comfortable
- 5 dirty
- 6 ___ rich
- 7 ___ dångerous
- 8 _ clean
- 9 poor
- 10 excited
- 11 / safe 12 empty

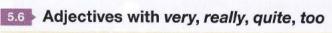


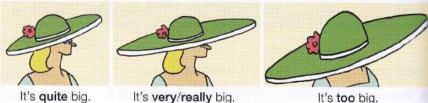












- Too has a negative meaning. It means more than you want.
- Very, really, quite and too come after the verb be and before adjectives: I was really excited. The restaurant was quite dirty.

TIP • We don't use too to mean very very: She's really happy, not She's too happy.

GRAMMAR

5.1 Past Simple (1): be (positive and negative) 5A 3 p40

POSITIVE (+)	NEGATIVE (-)
I was	I wasn't (= was not)
you/we/they were	you/we/they weren't (= were not)
he/she/it was	he/she/it wasn't

It was a fantastic party!
About thirty people were here.
Robert wasn't here because he was ill.
My two brothers weren't here.

5.2 Past Simple (1): be (questions and short answers) 5A 7 p41

QUESTIONS (?)

question word	was/were	subject	
When	was	Albert's 13th birthday?	
Where	was	the party?	
	Were	his friends	there?
	Was	the food	good?
Where	were	his grandparents?	

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, I/he/she/it was.	No, I/he/she/it wasn't.		
Yes, you/we/they were.	No, you/we/they weren't.		

WAS BORN/WERE BORN

When were you born?	I was born in 1940.		
7	1		
Where was Matt born?	He was born in Liverpool		

TIP • We say I was born in 1940. not I born in 1940.

Past Simple (2): regular and irregular verbs (positive)5B 4 p42

- We use the Past Simple to talk about the past. We know when these things happened.
- The Past Simple positive is the same for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they).

regular verbs: spelling rule	examples		
most regular verbs: add -ed	want ed start ed	work ed visit ed	
regular verbs ending in -e: add -d	moved	loved	
regular verbs ending in consonant + y : - $y \rightarrow -i$ and add $-ed$	studied	marr ied	
regular verbs ending in consonant + vowel + consonant: double the last consonant	stopped		

TIP • There are no rules for **irregular verbs**. There is an Irregular Verb List on p167.

5.4 Past Simple (2): Wh- questions

5B 9 p43

Past Simple questions are the same for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they).

question word	auxiliary	subject	infinitive	
What	did	James	study	at university?
When	did	he	make	Terminator 2?
Which (film)	did	he	make	in 3D in 2009?
Who	did	he	marry	in 1997?

TIP • Notice the difference between these questions: Where do you live? (Present Simple)
Where did you live? (Past Simple).

REAL WORLD

5.1 Showing interest 5C 41 p45

I'm happy for you.	I'm sorry for you.	I'm surprised.	I'm not surprised.
Oh, nice. Oh, great!	Oh, dear. What a shame.	Wow! Really? You're joking!	Oh, right.

5.2 Asking follow-up questions 5C 6 p45

QUESTIONS YOU CAN ASK SOMEONE WHO ...

... WAS ILL AT THE WEEKEND What was wrong? Are you OK now? ... STAYED AT HOME What did you do?

... WENT TO THE CINEMA What did you see? What was it like? Who did you go with? ... WENT AWAY FOR THE WEEKEND What was it like? Where did you go? Who did you go with? Where did you stay?

Language Summary 6

VOCABULARY

6.1 The internet 6A 1 p48

use the internet send emails get emails read a blog download videos or music go online have a favourite website chat to your friends online have WiFi use a search engine

TIPS . We can say get emails or receive emails.

- We download music or videos onto a computer/laptop. The opposite of download is upload.
- We can say chat to someone or chat with someone.
- · Google is a popular search engine. We can also use google as a verb: Why don't you google it?
- Email, download, video, chat and blog can be nouns or verbs: I email my brother a lot. She blogs every day.

6.2 Mobile phones and TVs



charge your phone

Hello, are u going out?



send/get a text

ALL CHANNELS

GPS

ALL CHANNELS



a TV programme





an app





turn off

record

TIPS • You can get or receive a text. Text is also a regular verb: He texted me yesterday.

- You use a charger to charge your mobile phone.
- TV programme (UK) = TV show (US)

6.3 Past time phrases 6B 22 p50

AGO

We use ago to talk about a time in the past. We use it with the Past Simple: I met him two years ago. (= two years before now).

LAST

We use last to say the day, week, etc. in the past nearest to now: I met him last Friday. (= the Friday before now).

We use last with days (last Monday), months (last March) and in these phrases: last night, last week, last weekend, last month, last year, last century.

TIPS • We say last night, but yesterday morning/afternoon/ evening not last morning, etc.

We don't use a preposition with last: last year not in last year.

IN

- We use in with years (in 1986) and months (in May).
- We use in the with decades (in the nineties) and centuries (in the eighteenth century).

TIPS • We can use on with days (on Monday) to mean last: I met him on Monday. = I met him last Monday.

the day before vesterday = two days ago

6.4 Verbs from news stories

sail

crash



die

save



DVD-ROM 6









damage /'dæmid3/

receive





buy (bought /bo:t/)

lose /lu:z/ (lost)

find (found)



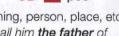


put (put)

say (said /sed/)

tell (told)

6.5 Articles: a, an and the



6D 4 p55

- We use the when we know which thing, person, place, etc. because there is only one: People call him the father of video games.
- We use a or an to talk about things or people for the first time: The story always has a hero, a princess and a villain.
- We use the to talk about a person or a thing for the second. third, etc. time: The villain wants to marry the princess.

TIPS • We use the in some fixed phrases: at the weekend, in the evening, go to the cinema, etc.

. We also use the with first, second, third, etc.: Shigeru designed the first Mario Brothers game in 1983.

61 Past Simple (3): negative 6A 3 p48

To make the Past Simple negative of be, we use wasn't or weren't (see GRAMMAR 5.1 >):

In the early days of the internet, search engines weren't very good and it wasn't easy for people to find the information they wanted.

To make the Past Simple negative of all other verbs, we use: subject + didn't (= did not) + infinitive

subject	auxiliary	infinitive	
They	didn't	like	each other at first.
They	didn't	finish	their course.
They	didn't	have	any money.

TIP • We use didn't for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they): I didn't go out last night. He didn't call me yesterday.

6.2 Past Simple (3): yes/no questions and short answers 6A 8 p49

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)

auxiliary	subject	infinitive	V
Did	you	go	to the cinema last week?
Did	Sergey	leave	Russia in 1978?
Did	he	go	to Maryland University?
Did	his parents	teach	computer science?

SHORT ANSWERS

Yes, I did.	No, I didn't.
Yes, you did.	No, you didn't.
Yes, he/she/it did.	No, he/she/it didn't.
Yes, we did.	No, we didn't.
Yes, they did.	No, they didn't.

TIP . Past Simple yes/no questions and short answers are the same for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they):

A Did you go shopping last weekend?

B Yes, I did./No, I didn't.

6.3 can/can't; could/couldn't 6B 4 p51

POSITIVE (+)

 We use can + infinitive to say that something is possible in the present.

You can choose from hundreds of TV channels. You can watch TV programmes online.

 We use could + infinitive to say that something was possible in the past.

In the seventies you could only get three channels. I could watch all my favourite programmes in colour!

NEGATIVE (-)

The negative of can is can't (= cannot). My son and daughter can't understand how people lived without them.

I can't explain this to my kids.

The negative of could is couldn't (= could not). You couldn't record TV programmes. You couldn't watch TV all night.

TIPS • Can/can't and could/couldn't are the same for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they).

• We sometimes use you to mean 'people in general': You could only get three channels. = People could only get three channels.

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS		
Can you watch TV online?	Yes, you can. No, you can't.		
Could you record programmes in 1974?	Yes, you could. No, you couldn't.		

Yes/No questions and short answers with can/could are the same for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they): A Can he/she download videos? B Yes, he/she can. A Could they record programmes? B No, they couldn't.

We can also use question words (What, How many, etc.) with can/could: How many channels can/could you get?

TIPS • We don't use do, does or did in questions with can/could: Can you watch TV online? not Do you can watch TV online?.

- We can also use can/could for ability in the present and the past: My sister can speak Russian. How many languages could your grandfather speak?
- We also use can for requests (Can you help me?) and offers (Can I help you?).

REAL WORLD

6.1 Talking about the news 6C 9 p53

To start a conversation about the news, we can say:

Did you hear about that train crash?

No, where was it?

Did you read about the eighty-year-old couple and their boat?

No, what happened?

To respond to good, bad and surprising news, we can say:

good news	bad news	surprising news		
Oh, that's good.	Oh no, that's terrible. Yes, isn't it awful? Oh, dear. Are they OK?	Really? You're joking!		

TIP . News is a singular noun. We say: The news is terrible. not The news are terrible.

Language Summary 7





7.1	Places in a town 7A 11 p56		b	C	0	e
Match	the words to pictures a-t.	The state of the s		1 1 1 1 1 1 1		THE STATE OF THE S
1 C	a building			11/1/2	1 3 3 E	H
2	a house			OF THE		
3	a flat					
4	a square /skweə/			h) Cu		
5	a mårket				4	U D D D D
6	a station		HANLEY			MARS TORS MARS MARS
7	a bus station					000
8	a park			466	DE	
9	a museum		0.5	7	Control of the same	TO TO
10	a theatre	K 2 Down		m		9 MM
11	a cinema		TKKET OFFICE		6000000000	1 HE M
12	a hotel		2		000 0000000	11.5
13	a café			THE PARTY	000 H	USE !
14	a shop	3 60	0			/ ,'
15	a restaurant	p — Turiumunu	gr human	Tal 64	Se	
16	a bar		Variation		3 34	BE HEE
17	a pub		THE GREENMAN			
18	an airport	W BAUMAN TO THE STATE OF THE ST		The state of the s	L	
19	a beach				2	
20	a road	Said Son		II'	What was	

TIPS • We can say a station or a train station.

a flat (UK) = an apartment (US); a cinema (UK) = a movie theatre (US)

Rooms and things in a

house 7B 22 p58

Do you remember the things in the flat in Park Road? Check on p58.

rooms	furniture /ˈfɜːnɪtʃə/ and other things in a house a fridge /fridʒ/, a cooker, a sink, a washing machine, a table, four chairs, cupboards /ˈkʌbədz/ a coffee table, two plants, a sofa, two armchairs		
in the kitchen			
in the living room			
in the bathroom	a bath, a shower, a toilet, a washbasin		
in the bedrooms	a double bed, a single bed, a desk, a plant, a chair, a shelf		
on the balcony	three plants, a table, two chairs		

TIP . The plural of shelf is shelves.

Shops 7C 11 p60



a bookshop



a clothes shop





a shoe shop



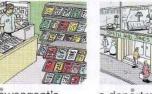
a supermarket



a kiosk



a newsagent's



a department store



a post office



a bank



a chemist's



a butcher's



a båker's

TIPS • We use in or at with shops: You can buy magazines in/at a newsagent's. But we say: at a kiosk not in a kiosk.

a shop (UK) = a store (US); a chemist's (UK) = a pharmacy (US)



a shoe/shoes

a sock/socks

a boot/boots

a trainer/trainers

jeans

shorts

trousers

- We use are with plural nouns that mean 'one thing': Those jeans are nice.
 - We use some or any with nouns that mean 'one thing': I want some new shorts. Have you got any black jeans?

TIPS • We can use a pair of ... with both types of plural noun; I've got a pair of red jeans/shoes.

 The word clothes /kləuðz/ is always plural: These clothes are guite expensive. If we want to use the singular, we can say an item of clothing.

there is/there are 7A 6 p57

	singular	plural
POSITIVE (+)	There's a nice beach.	There are lots of things to do.
NEGATIVE (-)	There isn't a station.	There aren't any restaurants.
QUESTIONS (?)	Is there a hotel?	Are there any good pubs?
SHORT ANSWERS	Yes, there is./No, there isn't.	Yes, there are./No, there aren't

TIPS • We use any in negatives and questions with there are: There aren't any restaurants.

- We can say lots of or a lot of: There are lots of/a lot of beautiful old buildings.
- We can also make negative sentences with no: There are no shops. = There aren't any shops.
- The Past Simple of there is and there are is **there was** and **there were**: There was a party last weekend. There were a lot of people at the party.

72 How much ... ? and How many ... ? 7B 4 p58

- We use How many ... ? with plural countable nouns (tables, bedrooms, people, chairs, plants, etc.): How many bedrooms are there? How many people are in this room?
- We use How much ... ? with uncountable nouns (furniture, money, space, time, etc.): How much space is there in the flat? How much furniture have you got?

TIP • When we ask about prices we say: How much is that? not How much money is that?: A How much is that? B It's £25.

73 some, any, a 7B 7 p59

- We use a (or an) in positive sentences, negatives and questions with singular countable nouns.
- We usually use some in positive sentences with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.
- We usually use any in negatives and questions with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.

\$2000 \$400 \$200 \$200 \$400 \$400 \$400 \$400	singular countable nouns	plural countable nouns	uncountable nouns
POSITIVE (+)	There's a cooker.	There are some chairs.	We'd like some information.
NEGATIVE (-)	There isn't a TV.	We haven't got any children.	I haven't got any money.
QUESTIONS (?)	Has it got a shower?	Are there any shops?	Is there any furniture?

REAL WORLD

7.1 What sales assistants say 7C 5 p60

Can I help you?

Do you need any help?

Yes, they're over there.

They're on the (second) floor.

Anything else?

Would you like anything else?

That's (£17.50), please.

Your pin number, please.

Would you like a bag?

Here's your change and your receipt. /rrsi:t/

TIPS • the ground floor (UK) = the first floor (US)

• We say the ground floor, the first floor, the second floor, etc.

7.2 What customers say 7C 6 p61

SAYING WHAT YOU WANT

Have you got any (guide books for London)? Can I have (four stamps for Europe), please? Do you sell (suitcases)?

I'll have this one, please.

ASKING ABOUT PRICES

How much is this (map)?

How much are these (lamps)?

OTHER USEFUL PHRASES

No, that's all, thanks. Here you are.

Thanks for your help.

TIPS • We use one in place of a singular noun:

A Would you like a bag? B No, thanks. I've got one.

• We use ones in place of a plural noun:

A How much are these lamps? B The big ones are £25.

Language Summary 8



VOCABULARY

8.1 Work 8A 1 p64

Match the words to pictures a-i.

a customer 4

3

- a report g notes
 - 6
- a message a contract
- a company 8 a meeting
- a conference 9



















TIPS . We can take notes and take a message.

- We can sign a letter and sign a contract.
- . We work for a company and work in an office.
- We write to a customer and write to a company.

8.2 Types of transport 8B 11 p66























a taxi



a bus



a tram









a boat

a bike a scooter







a motorbike

TIPS • We can say a taxi or a cab. a motorbike (UK) = a motorcycle (US)

83 Travelling verbs and phrases 8B 2 p66

go by car = drive go by plane = fly go on foot = walk

go by bus/coach = take the bus/coach go by bike = cycle go by ferry/boat = take the ferry/boat go by train/tube/tram = take the train/tube/tram

TIPS • We say go by bike, train, etc., but go on foot not go by foot.

- the tube (UK) = the subway (US)
- public transport = trains, buses, trams, etc.: I usually travel by public transport.

8.4 Indoor and outdoor activities 8D 11 p70

Match the verbs/phrases to pictures a-l.

1	swim	7	cook
2	ski	8	drive
3	surf	9	speak another långuage
4	windsurf	10	ride a horse
5	sail	11	ride a motorbike
6	sing	12	play a musical instrument



TIP . We use can/can't to talk about ability: I can speak Japanese. I can't ride a horse.

8.5 Adjectives and adverbs 8D 4 p70

- We use adjectives to describe nouns. They usually come before the noun. He's an excellent driver.
- We use adverbs like well, carefully, etc. to describe verbs. They usually come after the verb. He speaks Spanish fluently.

spelling rule	adjective	adverb
most adverbs: add -ly to the adjective	careful fluent bad	carefully fluently badly
adjectives ending in -y: -y → -i and add -ly	easy happy	easily happily
irregular adverbs	good fast hard	well fast hard

8.1 Present Continuous: positive and negative 8A 4 p64

- We use the Present Continuous to talk about things happening now:
 I'm waiting for a taxi. They're sitting in your office.
- We make the Present Continuous with: subject + be + verb+ing

POSITIVE (+)		NEGATIVE (-)		
l'm		I'm not		
you/we/they're	verb+ing	you/we/they aren't	verb+ing	
he/she/it's		he/she/it isn't		

verb+ing: spelling rules	examples	
most verbs: add -ing	play → playing look → looking	study → studying go → going
verbs ending in -e: take off -e and add -ing	make → making live → living	write → writ ing
verbs ending in consonant + vowel + consonant: double the last consonant and add -ing	sit → sitting stop → stopping	run → run ning

TIP • We can also make negatives with 're or 's + not: Danny's not doing anything. They're not looking very happy. etc.

8.2 Present Continuous: questions and short answers

8A 9 p65

QUESTIONS (?)

question word	auxiliary	subject	verb+ing	
Where	is	Frank	calling	from?
	Is	the taxi	moving?	
	Are	they	having	the meeting now?
What	is	Danny	doing?	

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS	
Am I working here today? Are you watching TV at the moment?	Yes, you are. Yes, I am.	No, you aren't. No, I'm not.
Is he/she/Janet answering his/her phone?	Yes, he/she is.	No, he/she isn't.
Are we going now?	Yes, you/we are.	No, you/we aren't.
Are they having the meeting now?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.

TIP • We can also make negative short answers with 're or 's + not: No, you're not. No, she's not, etc.

8.3 Present Simple or Present Continuous 8B 6 p67

- We use the Present Simple to talk about things that happen every day/week/month, etc.
- We use the Present Continuous to talk about things that are happening now.
- We usually use these words/phrases with the Present Simple:

usually sometimes always often normally never hardly ever every day/week/month

I normally go to work by train. I usually take the tube. It snows a lot in Canada every winter.

We usually use these words/phrases with the Present Continuous:

now today at the moment

He's watching TV now. I'm driving to work today. What are you doing at the moment?

REAL WORLD

8.1 Talking on the phone 8C 7 p69

asking to speak to people

Hello, can I speak to (Émily), please? Hello, is that (Chris Morris)?

saying who you are

This is (Émily Wise) from (3DUK). Speaking. It's (Clare).

calling people back

Can I cåll you bắck (in an hour)? I'll cåll you låter. (I'll = I will) Can you cåll me bắck?

other useful phrases

I got your message. Call me on my mobile. Hold on a moment.

TIP * When we answer the phone we say It's (Clare). not Pm (Clare).

Language Summary 9

a gorilla

12

TIP • The plural of sheep is sheep. The plural of wolf is wolves. The plural of mouse is mice.

a sheep



VOCABULARY

9.1 Holiday activities 9A 11 p72 have a picnic have a good/great/fantastic time stay in a hotel stay with friends or family rent a car have a picnic rent a car go sightseeing stay in a hotel rent a bike rent a boat go sightseeing /'sartsi:ɪŋ/ go diving go skiing /ski:in/ go camping go to museums go to the beach go divina go skiing go camping go to the beach go on holiday go on a boat trip go on a guided tour travel by public transport travel around travel around go on a boat trip go on a guided go on holiday TIPS • We can rent or hire a car, bike, etc. töur go on holiday (UK) = go on vacation (US) 9.2 Natural places 9B 11 p74 0 o Match these words to pictures a-j. a river h the countryside 6 an island a mountain /ˈaɪlənd/ /mauntin/ a lake a hill 8 3 the sea 4 a forest 9 the desert a wood 9 TIPS . A mountain is higher than a hill. A forest is bigger than a wood. · Countryside is uncountable: There's some beautiful countryside near the village. We usually say in the countryside/a forest/ a wood/the desert but on a mountain/a hill/ an island. 9.3 Animals 9C 11 p76 E Ċ Match these words to animals a-I. a lion a wolf a rabbit a chicken a tiger a mouse 3 a snake 10 a cow a monkey a bird /b3:d/ 11 5

9.4 Verb patterns (like doing, would like to do, etc.)

9D 5 p79

After some verbs we often use a second verb. The second verb is often in the verb+ing form (going, doing, etc.) or the infinitive with to (to go, to do, etc.):
Teenagers like going out on their own. I'd like to go back to the country one day.

+ verb+ing	+ infinitive with to	
like (doing)	would/'d like (to do)	
enjoy (doing)	decide (to do)	
love (doing)	want (to do)	
stop (doing)	need (to do)	
hate (doing)	would/'d love (to do)	

TIPS • These verbs can also be followed by nouns or pronouns: You don't need a car. (noun) He hates it. (pronoun)

• We can also use the infinitive with to after like, love and hate. In British English, verb+ing is more common: I like watching TV. In American English, the infinitive with to is more common: I like to watch TV.

GRAMMAR

9.1 Infinitive of purpose 9A 5 p73

To say why we do something, we often use the infinitive with to: We drove to a wildlife park to see some elephants. We went to Robben Island to visit the prison.

TIPS • We often answer Why ... ? questions with the infinitive with to: A Why did you go there? B To see some elephants.

- Sometimes we can also use for + noun: We went to Table Mountain for a picnic.
- * We don't use for to see to say why we do something: We drove to a wildlife park for to see some clephants.

9.2 Comparatives 9B 4 p74

- We use comparatives to compare two places, people or things: Cairo is hotter than Sharm El Sheikh. Cairo is probably noisier.
- When we compare two things in the same sentence, we use than after the comparative: The Sels Hotel is smaller than the Shokran Hotel.

type of adjective	spelling rule	comparative	
most 1-syllable adjectives	add -er	smaller older	
1-syllable adjectives ending in -e	add -r	safer nicer	
1-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant	double the last consonant and add -er	hot ter big ger but! new → newer	
2-syllable adjectives ending in -y	-y → -i and add - er	noisi er happier	
2-syllable adjectives not ending in -y	put <i>more</i> before the adjective	more crowded more common	
adjectives with 3 syllables or more	put <i>more</i> before the adjective	more expensive more interesting	
irregular adjectives	good bad	better worse	

TIPS • The opposite of more is less: The holiday in Sharm El Sheikh is more expensive. The holiday in Cairo is less expensive.

• We can also use more with nouns: There are more rooms in the Shokran Hotel.

REAL WORLD

9.1 Deciding what to do

9C 4 p77

asking people what they want to do

What would you like to do?
Where do you want to go?
Would you like (to go to London)?
Do you want (to go to Regent's Park)?

saying what you want to do

I'd like (to go to the beach).

I want (to go to Longleat).

Yes, that's a good idea.

Not really. I'd rather (stay at home).

TIPS • I'd like = I would like; I'd rather = I would rather.

- . Would like is more polite than want.
- We use I'd rather to say I want to do this more than something else.
- After would rather we use the infinitive (go, do, etc.): I'd rather rent a bike.
- * After would like and want we use the infinitive with to (to go, to do, etc.): I'd like to go swimming. I want to rent a car.

Language Summary 10

VOCABULARY



10.1 Verb phrases 10A 11 p80

aet fit get stressed

spend time spend money

carry the shopping carry the bags

wash the windows wash the car

take the lift take the escalator

have a bath have a shower

do the housework do some exercise

get on/off a bus get on/off a train







get fit

get stressed

carry the shopping







wash the car

take the lift

take the escalator







do the housework get on a bus

get off a train

TIPS • carry the shopping (UK) = carry the groceries (US) • take the lift (UK) = take the elevator (US)

10.2 Frequency expressions

10A 6 p81

once /wxns/ twice three times	a week	1 - 45/13/2004	minute day week
four times ten times etc.		every	month year etc.

TIP • We use How often ... ? to ask about frequency: A How often do you go to the gym? B Twice a week.

Appearance 10B 2 p82

age	height	body	appearance	race
He's/She's young middle-åged old	tall	He's/She's thin slim fat overweight	He's/She's beautiful good-looking attractive	white

eyes	hair /heə/	
He's/She's got blue eyes brown eyes green eyes	He's/She's got long/short hair dark/fair/blonde/grey hair	He's got a beard /biəd/ a moustache /mus'ta:ʃ/ He's bald /bɔ:ld/













overweight

blonde hair

a beard

TIPS • Middle-aged = the time in your life between young and old.

- Slim is more attractive than thin. Overweight is more polite than fat.
- * Beautiful, attractive and good-looking all mean the same. Beautiful is usually for women. Good-looking is usually for men. Attractive can be for both men and women.
- Asian = from a country in Asia (India, Thailand, Japan, etc.)
- We say long hair not long hairs and long dark hair not dark long hair.

10.4 Character 10B 6 p83

A hard-working person works very hard.

A lazv person doesn't like working.

A kind person likes doing things to help other people.

A funny person makes people laugh a lot.

Selfish people usually think about themselves, not other people. An outgoing person is friendly and likes meeting new people. When reliable people promise to do something, they always do it. It's difficult for a shy person to talk to new people.

A generous person likes giving people money and presents.

10.5 Health problems 10C 2 p84

I've got	a stomach ache /'stʌmək eɪk/ a headache /'hedeɪk/ toothache /'tu:θeik/ a sore throat /sɔ: 'θrəut/ a cold a cough /kɒf/ a temperature /'temprətʃə/		
I feel	ill terrible sick better		
my hurts	back arm foot leg		

TIPS • We can say I've got a stomach ache/toothache or I've got stomach ache/toothache, but not l've get headache.

- We can also say: I'm ill/sick/better but not I'm terrible.
- I'm sick can also mean the same as I'm ill. In American English, sick is more common: I can't come to work today. I'm sick. In British English I feel sick. usually means I want to be sick.

10.6 Treatment 10C 3 p84

go to bed

go home

go to the doctor

go to the dentist

stay at home stay in bed

take the day off

take some påinkillers

take some cough medicine

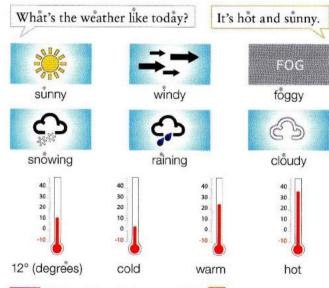
take some antibiotics

spring summer autumn winter

TIPS . We use in with seasons: in (the) winter.

* autumn (UK) = fall (US)





10.9 Word building 10D 6 p87

noun	adjective	adjective	noun
sun	sửnny	ill	illness
wind	windy	hắppy	håppiness
cloud	cloudy	sad	sådness
fog	foggy	fit	fitness

Noun: There isn't much sun today. His illness lasted a year. Adjective: I love sunny days. He was ill on holiday.

TIP • For snow and rain we usually use the verb, not the adjective: It's snowing/raining. not It's snowy/rainy.

GRAMMAR

10.1 Imperatives 10A 4 p81

- We often use imperatives to give strong advice.
- The positive imperative is the same as the infinitive (go, do, etc.):
 Walk up and down stairs. Get off the bus one stop earlier.
- The negative imperative is Don't + infinitive (Don't go, Don't do, etc.):
 Don't take lifts. Don't drive to the supermarket once a week.

TIP • We also use imperatives to give orders and instructions: Go home! Don't write anything.

10.2 should/shouldn't 10A 10 p81

- We use should and shouldn't to give advice.
- We use should to say something is a good thing to do: You should do some exercise three times a week.
- We use shouldn't to say something is a bad thing to do: You shouldn't eat so many pizzas and biscuits.
- After should and shouldn't we use the infinitive: You should eat more fruit. not You should to eat more fruit.

TIPS . To ask for advice, we can say: What should I do?

• In spoken English, should/shouldn't is more common than the imperative for advice.

10.3 Questions with like 10B 8 p83

- We use What's ('s = is) he/she like? to ask for a general description. We often ask this when we don't know the person. The answer can include character and physical appearance: She's friendly and outgoing. And she's very beautiful.
- We use What does he/she look like? to ask about physical appearance only: She's tall and slim, and she's got long dark hair.
- We use What does he/she like doing? to ask what people enjoy doing in their free time: She likes clubbing and going to restaurants.

TIPS • How is he/she? asks about health, not personality:

A How's your mum? B She's fine, thanks.

• We don't use like in answers to questions with What's he like? and What does she look like?

A What's he like? B He's kind, not He's like kind.

A What does she look like? B She's very tall. not She's like very tall.

REAL WORLD

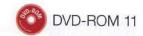
10.1 Talking about health 10C 5 p85

asking about someone's health	expressing sympathy	giving advice
Are you OK? Are you alright? What's wrong? What's the matter?	Oh, dear. I hope you get better soon. Get well soon.	Why don't you (go home)? You shouldn't (go to work today). You should (go to the doctor). Take the day off.

TIP • After Why don't you ... ? we use the infinitive: Why don't you **go** home?

Language Summary 11

VOCABULARY



New Year's resolutions

11A 2 p88

get a new job

get fit work hard

work less lose three kilos lose weight /west/

have a holiday have fun

do a computer course do more exercise

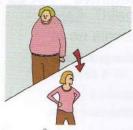
stop working at weekends stop smoking

move to another country move house

not eat sweet things not eat chocolate cake

TIPS • We can do a course or take a course, but not make a course.

- We can also do/take a course in something: I'm going to do a course in engineering.
- * Exercise is also a verb: I exercise every day.







have a holiday



do more exercise



stop smoking

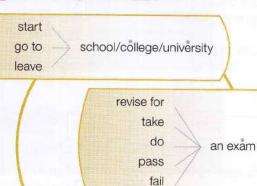


move house

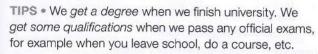


not eat sweet things

11.2 Studying 11B 1 p90



some qualifications a degree get a job



We can say revise for an exam or study for an exam.



revise for an exam



take an exam



pass an exam



fail an exam



get a degree

11.3 Collocations 11D 5 p95

 Collocations are words/phrases that are often used together. They can be:

verb + noun (book a flight, take photos, etc.)

verb + preposition (stay in a hotel, go for a run, etc.)

verb + adjective (get married, become famous, etc.)

verb + adverb (work hard, speak fluently, etc.)

book	stay	rent	get
a flight /flart/	with (you)	a motorbike	to your place
a hotel room	in (the USA)	a car	a taxi
a train ticket	in a hotel	a flat	married
a seat on a train	at home	a house	home
a table in a restaurant			divorced

TIP • A flight is a journey by plane: My flight to Los Angeles leaves at 10.30.

be going to (1): positive and negative 11A 5 p88

I'm going to do a computer course.

I'm not going to eat sweet things any more.

- These sentences talk about the future.
- The people decided to do these things before they said them.
- We use be going to + infinitive for future plans.

subject	be (+ not)	going to	infinitive	
We	're (= are)	going to	get	fit.
Val	's (= is)	going to	stop	smoking.
David	's	going to	lose	weight.
I	'm (= am)	going to	do	more exercise.
I	'm not	going to	eat	sweet things any more.

TIP • With the verb go, we usually say I'm going to Spain. not I'm going to go to Spain. But both forms are correct.

11.2 be going to (1): Wh- questions 11A 8 p89

question word	be	subject	going to	infinitive	
What	are	you	going to	do	next year?
Where	's	she	going to	live?	
Where	's	he	going to	study?	
When	are	they	going to	start	getting fit?

be going to or might 11B 4 p91

- We use be going to to say a future plan is decided: I'm going to meet some friends in town at seven.
- We use *might* to say something in the future is **possible**, but **not decided**: I might go to the party or I might go out for a meal with Sam.
- After might we use the infinitive: I might stay at home and watch a film.

TIPS • Might is the same for all subjects (I, you, he, she, it, we, they).

• To make questions with *might*, we usually use *Do you think* ... ?: Do you think he might come to the party?

be going to (2): yes/no questions and short answers

11B 10 p91

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS		
Am I going to be late?	Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.	
Are you going to look for a job?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.	
Is he/she going to sell his/her car?	Yes, he/she is.	No, he/she isn't.	
Are we going to stop working?	Yes, we/you are.	No, we/you aren't	
Are you going to move house?	Yes, we are.	No, we aren't.	
Are his parents going to help him?	Yes, they are.	No, they aren't.	

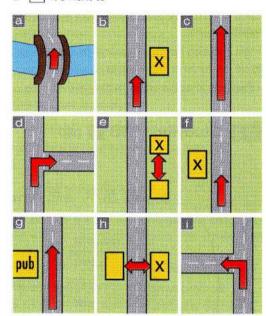
TIP • We can also answer yes/no questions with (Yes,) I might: A Are you going to buy it? B I might.

REAL WORLD

11.1 Directions 11C 3 p92

Match the phrases to pictures a-i.

- turn right
- 2 turn left
- 3 go over the bridge
- 4 go past the pub
- 5 c go along this road/street
- 6 it's on the/your left
- 7 it's on the/your right
- 8 it's opposite
- 9 it's next to



11.2 Asking for and giving directions 11C 7 p93

ASKING FOR DIRECTIONS

Excuse me. Is there (a newsagent's) near here? Excuse me. Where's (the post office)? Excuse me. How do I/we get to (the market)?

GIVING DIRECTIONS

There's one in (Berry Street).

Go along this road/street and turn right/left.

Go påst the pub.

Go over the bridge.

(The newsagent's) is on the/your right/left.

It's opposite (the supermarket).

It's next to (the café).

It's over there.

You cắn't miss it.

IF YOU CAN'T GIVE DIRECTIONS

Sőrry, I dőn't knőw.

Sorry, I don't live around here.

Language Summary 12

VOCABULARY



12.1 Big and small numbers 12A 11 p96

For numbers with a decimal point (.) we say point:
 0.2 = nought point two or zero point two
 2.45 = two point four five

TIPS • 0 = nought / no:t / or zero (or oh when we say phone numbers).

- In English we write 7.5 not 7,5. We use a decimal point (.) not a comma (.).
- We can use one or a with hundred, thousand and million:
 100 = a hundred or one hundred
 1,000 = a thousand or one thousand
 1,000,000 = a million or one million
- For long numbers we use and after hundred (but not after thousand or million):
 127 = a hundred and twenty-seven
 850,000 = eight hundred and fifty thousand

But 2,300 = two thousand, three hundred not two thousand and three hundred

• We don't add a plural -s to hundred, thousand and million: 32,470 = thirty-two thousand, four hundred and seventy 50,000,000 = fifty million not fifty millions
But we can say: hundreds/thousands/millions of ...:
There were hundreds of people at the concert.
We saw thousands of birds.

12.2	Things	and pl	ac	es
at an	airport	12C	2	p100

Match the words/phrases to pictures a-m.	a	b
1 a påssport		
2 a boarding pass	C	6
3 hånd luggage /lʌgɪdʒ/	Towns 164	
4 d a ticket	8048Shr	TICKET
5 pack your bags		
6 påssengers		- 47
7 a flight number		
8 a gate	9	D
9 a check-in desk	TA IL	BA 901
10 a båg drop		
11 a window seat		П
12 a middle seat	gate 12	att see
13 an aisle /aɪl/ seat	yale 12	
TIPS • We can say a boarding	k	M
pass or a boarding card.	888	899
• When a flight is on time, it leaves	9 1988	32 1222
or arrives at the correct time. When	m	
a flight is delayed , it leaves or	9 000	

GRAMMAR

12.1 Superlatives 12A 5 p97

- We use comparatives (bigger, more expensive, etc.) to compare two things (see GRAMMAR 9.2).
- We use superlatives to compare three or more things.

type of adjective	spelling rule	superlative
most 1-syllable adjectives	add -est	longest shortest
1-syllable adjectives ending in -e	add -st	safe st nice st
1-syllable adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant	double the last consonant and add -est	biggest hottest but! new → newest
2 -syllable adjectives ending in - <i>y</i>	-y → -i and add -est	heaviest happiest
2 -syllable adjectives not ending in - <i>y</i>	put <i>most</i> before the adjective	most boring most crowded
adjectives with 3 syllables or more	put <i>most</i> before the adjective	most expensive most beautiful
irregular adjectives	good bad	best worst

TIPS • We say: The best place in the world. not of the world or for the world.

• Before superlatives in sentences we use:

the

Sanjay Kumar Sinha taught **the** longest lesson in the world.

The shortest film in the world is 'Colin'.

possessive 's

It was probably the **world's** hottest soup. He's my **sister's** oldest relative.

possessive adjectives

Matt's my best friend.

arrives later than the correct time.

It was his most important book.

* the + superlative is the most common form.

12.2 Present Perfect: positive and negative 12B 13 p98

- We use the Present Perfect to talk about experiences in life until now. We don't say when they happened: I've been to about forty countries.
- We use the Past Simple if we say when something happened:

Two weeks ago I went to Mexico.

TIP • We can't use the Present Perfect if we say a time: I went to England in 2011. not I've been to England in 2011.

POSITIVE (+)

I/you/we/they + 've (= have) + past participle he/she/it + 's (= has) + past participle

I've stayed in some of the world's best hotels. We've had lots of other jobs. He's written travel articles about lots of amazing places.

NEGATIVE (-)

I/you/we/they + haven't (= have not) + past participle he/she/it + hasn't (= has not) + past participle

I haven't been to Australia. They haven't had a holiday together. He hasn't been to South America before.

TIP • We can say I haven't ... or I've never ...: I've never been to Australia. They've never had a holiday together.

PAST PARTICIPLES

- For regular verbs, add -ed or -d to the infinitive: work → worked, live → lived, etc. The Past Simple and past participles of regular verbs are the same (see GRAMMAR 5.3 >).
- For irregular verbs, there are no rules. Look at the past participles in the Irregular Verb List, p167.

TIP • go has two past participles, been and gone. When we use the Present Perfect to talk about our experiences we usually use been: I've been to Italy. (I went to Italy in the past and I'm not in Italy now).

12.3 Have you ever ... ? questions and short answers 12B 7 p99

- We use the Present Perfect to ask about people's experiences. If the answer is yes, we use the Past Simple to ask for (or give) more information:
 - A Have you ever been to Peru? B Yes, I have./No, I haven't. A Did you have a good time?

 - B Yes, I did./No, I didn't.

YES/NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWER	RS
Have I ever worked in a restaurant? Have you ever been to Canada? Has he ever lived in the USA? Has she ever written a book? Have we ever been there before? Have they ever worked in an office?	Yes, you have. Yes, I/we have. Yes, he has. Yes, she has. Yes, we have Yes, they have.	No, you haven't. No, I/we haven't. No, he hasn't. No, she hasn't. No, we haven't No, they haven't.

TIP • ever + Present Perfect = any time in your life until now. We often use ever in questions.

REAL WORLD

12.1 At the airport 12C 3 p100

THINGS YOU HEAR AT THE CHECK-IN DESK OR BAG DROP

Can I have your passport, please? How many bags are you checking in? Did you pack your bags yourself? And have you got any hand luggage? Here's your boarding pass. You're in seat (16F). No, (it's) an aisle seat. Gate (twelve). Boarding is at (fifteen thirty). Enjoy your flight.

THINGS YOU CAN SAY AT THE CHECK-IN DESK OR BAG DROP

Is that a window seat? Which gate is it? Is the flight on time?

12.2 Saying goodbye 12C 6 p101

Have you got	everything? your passport? your boarding pass?	Yes, I have, thanks.	
Håve a	nice holiday. good time. good trip.	Thanks, I will.	
Don't forget to send me/us	a text. an email. a postcard.	Yes, of course.	
See you	in a month. soon. on the next course.	Yes, see you.	

TIP • When we aren't going to see someone between Friday and Monday. we often say: Have a nice/good weekend. We often reply: You too.

Audio and Video Scripts

CD1 -4

Do exercise 6 on your own. | Listen and practise. | Look at the board. | Listen and check. | Work in pairs. | Match the words to the pictures. | Fill in the gaps. | Ask and answer the questions. | Work in groups. | Look at the photo on page 11. | Compare answers. | Open your book.

CD1 > 6

class | photo | please | listen | nineteen

CD1 >7

MARCOS Hello. Sorry I'm late.
TEACHER No problem. What's your first name?

- M It's Marcos.
- T What's your surname?
- M Fuentes.
- T How do you spell that?
- M F-U-E-N-T-E-S.
- T Welcome to the class, Marcos.
- M Thank you.

CD1 8

- A CAMILLE Hello, is this the English class?
- TEACHER Yes, it is.
 C Oh, good. Sorry I'm late!
- T No problem. What's your first name?
- C Camille
- T How do you spell that?
- C C-A-M-I-double L-E.
- T And what's your surname?
- C It's Laurent.
- T And how do you spell that?
- C L-A-U-R-E-N-T.
- T Thanks, Camille. Welcome to the class.
- B BARTEK Hello, sorry I'm late.
 TEACHER No problem. What's your name?
- B My name's Bartek.
- T How do you spell that, please?
- B B-A-R-T-E-K.
- T And what's your surname?
- B Kowalski.
- T OK. And how do you spell that?
- B K-O-W-A-L-S-K-I.
- T Thanks. Welcome to the class, Bartek.
- B Thank you.

CD1 >11

ANSWER Tuesday

CD1 > 15

ANSWERS 3 Spain 4 Australia 5 Italy, Brazil, the UK

CD1 > 18

- A . A What's your phone number?
- B Er ... wait a minute ... it's 01221 960744.
- A 01221 960744?

- B Yes, that's right.
- B A What's Tina's mobile number?
- B It's 07906 394896.
- A 07906 ... er ...
- В 394896.
- C A What's the phone number of your hotel?
- B It's 0119 498 0691. I'm in room 302.
- A OK, thanks.
- D A What's your number in Australia?
- B It's 0061 02 9967 2315.
- A So that's 0061 ... 02 ...
- В ... 9967 2315.
- A OK. Thanks.

CD1 >20

ANSWERS 1 engineer 2 doctor 3 musician 4 police officer 5 accountant

CD1 >21

I'm not a teacher. | We aren't from the USA. |
She isn't famous. | Are you from Spain? |
Yes, I am. | No, I'm not. | Is she a musician? |
Yes, she is. | No, she isn't. | Are you from
New York? | Yes, we are. | No, we aren't.

CD1 28

forty | seventeen | eighty | sixty | eighteen fourteen | sixteen | seventy

VIDEO 1 CD1 26

WOMAN Right, first I need some personal details. What's your surname, please?

- P It's Whatling.
- W And how do you spell that?
- P W-H-A-T-L-I-N-G.
- W OK, thanks. What's your first name?
- P Paul.
- W And what's your nationality?
- P I'm British.
- W OK. What's your address?
- P It's 29 Elmore Road, Bristol.
- W How do you spell Elmore?
- P E-L-M-O-R-E.
- W And what's your postcode?
- P BS13 6QT.
- W I'm sorry?
- P BS13 6QT.
- W Great, thanks a lot. What's your mobile number?
- P 07969 831016.
- w 07969 ...
- P ... 831016.
- W OK. And what's your home number?
- P It's 0117 480 6544.
- W Could you say that again, please?
- P 0117 480 6544.
- W Right. And the last question ... what's your email address?
- P It's paul ninety-nine at webmail dot com.
- W Could you repeat that, please?
- P Yes, paul ninety-nine at webmail dot com.

W OK, thanks a lot. Now, what type of car would you like?

CD1 >30

this → What's this? → What's this in English? | that → What's that? → What's that in English? | these → What are these? → What are these in English? | those → What are those?

CD1 >32

British | teacher | thirty | mobile Japan | address | thirteen | Brazil bicycle | manager | Germany | Mexican computer | musician | umbrella | mechanic seventeen | engineer | Japanese | unemployed

CD1 >34

I've got an old car. | You've got a new mobile. | He's got a big TV. | She's got a new bicycle. | We've got a beautiful cat. | They've got an old DVD player. | I haven't got a laptop. | We haven't got a car. | He hasn't got a diary.

CD1 >35

INTERVIEWER Hello. Have you got time to answer some questions? It's a product survey about computers, cameras, TVs, that sort of thing.

MARY Yes, OK.

ALAN Sure.

- I Oh, good. Thanks. Right, first question. Have you got a laptop?
- A No, I haven't, but I've got an old computer.
- I And you, madam? Have you got a laptop?
- M Yes, I have, but it's not very good.
- I Thanks. Right, next question. Have you got a camera?
- M Yes, I have.
- I And what about you, sir? Have you got a camera?
- A No, I haven't. I take photos with my mobile.
- I Right. And have you got an MP3 player?
- M What's an MP3 player?
- A They're for music. They're very small.
- M Oh, those things. No, I haven't got one of those.
- I And you, sir? Have you got an MP3 player?
- A Yes, I have.
- I Have you got a radio?
- A No, I haven't. I listen to the radio on my mobile.
- I And you, madam?
- M Yes, I have.
- I Thanks. Right, the last question. Have you got a DVD player?
- A Yes, I have. I watch a lot of DVDs.
- I And you, madam? Have you got a DVD player?

M Yes, I have, but it's very old.

I Right. Well, madam, we've got some very good DVD players at the moment ...

CD1 > 37

ANSWERS 2 children 4 daughter 5 father 6 mother 7 brother 9 sisters 11 grandchildren 12 grandsons 13 granddaughter 15 uncle 16 cousins 18 grandfather 19 grandmother

CD1 > 38

Ålan's → Pam is Ålan's aunt. | Martina's → Greg is Martina's husband. | Florence's → Rôbbie is Florence's brother. | Ben's → Mary is Ben's wife. | Ben and Mary's → Florence is Ben and Mary's granddaughter.

CD1 > 39

JILL Lüke, come and look at these photos of my family.

LUKE OK.

- J Right ... This is my sister, Pam, and her husband, Nick.
- L Pam's an English teacher, isn't she?
- J Yes, that's right.
- L What about Nick?

J He's a doctor.

- L Oh, right. How many children have they got?
- J Two. A boy and a girl. Look, here's a photo of them.

L Hmm. How old are they?

J Er, Robbie is six and Florence is about ten months old.

L They're beautiful.

J Yes, they are. And this is my brother, Greg. He's an engineer.

L And who's that?

J That's Greg's wife, Martina. She's from Italy. Oh, and that's their son, Alan.

L How old is he?

J Ålan – he's nineteen. He's a student at Cambridge University.

L Really?

J Yes, he loves it there. And these are my parents. They're retired now.

L How old are they?

- J Mum's seventy and Dad's seventy-three. And that's Lily, my favourite member of the family.
- L Sorry, where?

J There.

- L Oh, the cat!
- J Yes, she's beautiful!

CD1 >40

- 1 A What time is it?
- B It's one o'clock.
- 2 A What's the time, please?
- B It's about half past seven.
- 3 A Excuse me, have you got the time, please?
- B Yes, it's four fifteen.
- A Thanks a lot.

CD1 42 CD1 44

A Thank you for calling Brent Gallery. We're open Mondays to Fridays from 10 a.m. to 6.30 p.m. and on Saturday and Sunday from 10 a.m. to 4.30 p.m. The exhibition now showing is Mexican Art. [end of [CDI]] 42] Ticket prices are £9.50 for adults and £6.50 for children. For more information about the exhibition go to our website at www.brentgallery.org.uk.

B Welcome to the FilmWorld information and booking line. Here are the films showing at this cinema from Friday June the 10th to Thursday June the 16th. A New Day, certificate 12, showing at 4.40, 7.00 and 9.20. The Brothers, certificate 15, showing at 5.00, 7.15 and 9.30. [end of ODI 42] Ticket prices are £11.50 for adults and £8.25 for children under 16. To book tickets please press 1 or go to our website at www.filmworld.co.uk.

VIDEO 2 CD1 45

JOSH Mum?

ALISON Yes, Josh?

- J Can I have some popcorn?
- A Yes, OK. Here's some money.
- J And can I have a Coke?
- A Yes, OK. But hurry up.

LOUISE Have you got any money, Chris? If not, I've got my credit card.

CHRIS No, it's OK. I've got some money.
... Hi. Can I have two tickets for The
Brothers, please?

TICKET SELLER Yes, of course.

- C How much is that?
- TS That's £23, please.
- C Here you are.
- TS Thanks.
- L What time is the film?
- TS It starts at seven fifteen. Here are your tickets. You're in screen 2.
- C Thanks a lot.
- TS You're welcome. Enjoy the film.
- L We've got 20 minutes before the film starts.
- C OK, let's have a drink first.
- L Good idea.
- A Hello. Can I have two tickets for A New Day, please? One adult and one child.
- TS Yes, of course.
- A How much are the tickets?
- TS £11.50 for adults and £8.25 for children. So that's £19.75, please.
- A Here you are. What time's the film?
- TS It starts in two minutes. Here are your tickets. You're in screen 1.
- A Thank you very much.
- TS You're welcome. Enjoy the film.
- A Thanks. Bye. ... Hurry up, Josh. The film starts in two minutes.
- J OK.

CD1 -47

NICK Pam, where's my suitcase?

PAM Here it is, behind the sofa.

N And have you got my keys?

- P No, Nick, of course I haven't. They're on the desk. By the computer.
- N OK, thanks. And where's my mobile?
- P Oh, I don't know. Look, there it is, under my coat. There, on the sofa!
- N Thanks.

ROBBIE Mum, where are my new shoes?

- P They're under the chair by the window.
- R And where's my bag?
- P Oh, Robbie. It's by the door. Where it always is.
- R Thanks, Mum.
- N Right. Are you ready, Robbie?
- R Yes
- P Have you got your school books?
- R Yes, they're in my bag. Look.
- N Oh no! Where's my passport?
- P It's on the table by the window. In front of the plant.
- N Oh yes, thanks.
- P Bye, love. See you on Sunday.
- N Bye.
- P Right ... hmm ... where's the baby?

CD1 >53

FREDDIE Hello, Jeanette!

JEANETTE Oh, hello ... er ...

- F Freddie. Freddie Roberts.
- J You don't work in this office, do you?
- F No, I work in the King Street office.
- J Oh ... er ... yes, of course.
- F Good party, isn't it?
- J Yes, very nice.
- F Er, Jeanette. Do you go out after work? On Fridays, maybe?
- J No, I don't, sorry. I'm always very tired so I just go home.
- F Right. What do you do in the evenings?
- J I have dinner and watch TV.
- F Do you go to the cinema?
- J No, I don't. But I watch a lot of DVDs.
- Yes, me too. What do you do at the weekends?
- J Well, on Saturday morning I go shopping. And I don't go out on Saturday evening. I stay in and watch TV.
- F Right.
- J And on Sunday afternoon I visit my parents.
- F Oh, OK. Do you go to concerts?
- J Yes, I do. You know, when I have time.
- F Well, um ... I've got two tickets for a concert on Sunday evening. Do you want to come with me?
- J Er ... thanks, Freddie, but there's a problem well, 3 problems, actually.
- E Oh
- J I'm married! And I've got two children!
- F Oh ... well, no problem. Oh look, there's Catherine. Er, I've got something I want to ask her. Excuse me.
- J Really!

CD1 -55

- 1 What do you do in the evenings? (x2)
- 2 Do you go to the cinema? (x2)
- 3 What do you do at the weekends? (x2)
- 4 Do you go to concerts? (x2)

CD1 > 56

- 1 A Do you go out a lot in the week?
- B Yes, we do.
- 2 A Do you visit your parents at the weekend?
- B Yes, I do.
- 3 A Do you go to concerts at the weekend?
- B No, we don't.
- 4 A Do you go shopping on Saturdays?
- B Yes, I do
- 5 A Do your parents go out on Saturday evenings?
- B No, they don't. They stay in and watch TV.

GPI >58

- 1 I'm 30 today.
- 2 We've got a new baby daughter.
- 3 Today is our 40th wedding anniversary.
- 4 Guess what! We're getting married!
- 5 ... 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 ...

COI - 61

- 1 A What day is it today?
- B It's Wednesday.
- 2 A What's the date today?
- B It's the fifth of March.
- 3 A What's the date tomorrow?
- B It's March the sixth.
- 4 A When's your birthday?
- B It's on June the third.

CD1 > 62

- 1 A When do you start your English course?
- B On September the fifth.
- 2 A When's your birthday, Sam?
- B It's on the thirteenth of December.
- A Oh, that's on Tuesday!
- 3 A When's Mother's Day?
- B It's on the fourteenth of March.
- A Oh, that's next week.
- 4 A When do you start your new job?
- B On the second of July.
- 5 A Excuse me. What's the date today?
- B It's October the thirtieth.
- A Thanks a lot.
- 6 A When's Matt and Sarah's wedding anniversary?
- B I think it's the first of February.
- A Oh, no! That's today!

VIDEO 3 CD1 63

LOUISE Here's your tea.

CHRIS Thanks a lot.

- L Chris?
- C Yes?
- L What's the date today?
- C It's the twenty-ninth. Why do you ask?
- L It's Sophie's birthday on Thursday.
- C Is it?
- L Yes, and I haven't got a present for her.
- C Oh. Have you got a card?
- L Yes, I have.
- C Oh, well. That's OK, then.
- L But I want to get her a present too. She's one of our best friends.
- C OK then. Let's get her a present.
- L Right. What shall we get her?
- C Oh, I don't know. What about an MP3 player?
- No, I don't think so. I think she's got one.
- C OK then. Why don't we get her a book?
- L Maybe. But she's got lots of books.
- C Hmm. This is difficult, isn't it?
- L Yes, it is.
- C I know! Let's get her a DVD.
- L Yes, that's a good idea. Sophie and Marcus watch a lot of DVDs.
- C And I think they've got a new TV.
- L OK. Which DVD shall we get?
- C Let's get her a film. Then we can watch it first!
- L Chris!

CD1 >65

JEANETTE Dominic, do you think I'm a happy person in the morning?

DOMINIC Yes, sometimes. Why do you ask?

- J It's this questionnaire. 'Are you an early bird or a night owl?'. I'm sometimes happy in the morning, but I don't have a lot of energy ... so that's b.
- D What are the other questions?
- J Here, come and have a look. Question two, well, that's easy. I hardly ever get up before nine at the weekend.
- D Yes, that's true.
- J The next question is about parties.
- D Oh, that's easy. When we go to a party, you never stay to the end.
- J Yes, that's true, I always leave early, don't I? OK, question four. Yes, I often watch films late at night.
- D But you never see the end!
- J Yes, you're right. So that's c.
- D What about question five? When do you see friends at the weekend?
- J Well, I usually see friends in the afternoon. Right, the last question.
- D Ah, this is a good one.
- J Yes, I'm always happy to talk to friends when they phone before eight in the morning.
- D What? That's not true! I always answer the phone.
- J Yes, you answer the phone, then I talk to my friends. So, it's a. Right, what's my score?
- D OK, your score is ... um ...

CD1 > 68

POLLY Hi, Lorna. How are you? LORNA I'm fine. But how are you? You're

LORNA I'm fine. But how are you? You're here and your husband's in Chile!

- P Oh, I'm fine. And Trevor's back next month. He's got four weeks' holiday.
- L So how is he?
- P Well, he's very happy there. The job's great and the hotel's very good. And all of the people are nice. But he doesn't like the weather. It's hot and it hardly ever rains.

GP1 >69

POLLY Well, he's very happy there. The job's great and the hotel's very good.

And all of the people are nice. But he doesn't like the weather. It's hot and it hardly ever rains.

LORNA What does he do in his free time?

- P Well, you know Trevor. He doesn't read a lot, but he plays video games, of course!
- L Oh right.
- P And he loves sport, so he watches a lot of sport on TV. They've also got a cinema there, so he sees a lot of new films.
- L Oh, that's good.
- P Yes, and he's got a very good camera, so he takes a lot of photos.
- L But he's usually very active does he do any sport?
- P Oh, yes. He plays a lot of tennis. In fact, he has tennis lessons every week.

 And he goes to the gym every day. He says the gym at the hotel's great. And he goes swimming a lot. But he doesn't go running because it's hot in the day!
- L What about running in the evening? It isn't hot then.
- P No, he can't. He starts work in the evening! He studies the stars, remember?
- L Of course! Do you talk to him very often?
- P No, the time difference is a problem. But we email every day and he sends me lots of photos. Here's one I got this morning ...

GD1 > 74

- 1 What does she do?
- 2 Does she like rock music?
- 3 What food does she like?
- 4 Does she like sport?
- 5 Does she have any animals?
- 6 What does she do on Saturday evenings?

VIDEO 4 GD1 >77

CLARE This is a nice place.

PAUL Yes, it is, isn't it? I hear the burgers are very good here.

C Hmm. The salads look good too. Oh, it's difficult to decide ... Yes, the chicken salad, I think.

[See exercise 6a p37]

- 1 What would you like to drink?
- 2 Would you like anything else?
- 3 Would you like a dessert?
- 4 Would you like tea or coffee?
- P No, don't worry, Clare. Let me pay for this.
- C Are you sure?
- P Yes, of course.
- C OK. Here's a tip.

CD1 >79

Would you like to order now? Yes, I'd like the chicken salad, please. Can I have the cheeseburger and chips, please? What would you like to drink? We'd like a bottle of mineral water, please. Would you like anything else? Would you like a dessert? Yes, I'd like the fruit salad, please. And can I have the apple pie with cream? Would you like tea or coffee?

CD1 >80

CHEF Morning, Dylan. Good weekend? DYLAN Yes, thank you. And you?

- C Yes, thanks. So, what new nationalities have we got in school this week?
- D New nationalities? Er, we've got Japanese, er French and Turkish.
- C OK. Let's write the new breakfast menus.
- D Yes, chef. So what do the Japanese have?
- C Well, they usually have rice and fish and soup, and they drink green tea.
- D Rice ... fish ... soup and ... green tea. OK. And the French?
- C They have a croissant or toast and jam. Oh and they usually have coffee with milk.
- D Croissant ... toast ... jam ... coffee. Well, that's easy. And what about the Turkish students? What do they have for breakfast?
- C Well, they usually have big breakfasts. They have bread, cheese, eggs, olives and tomatoes.
- D Wow! That's a lot! And to drink?
- C They usually drink tea.
- D OK. So that's bread, cheese, eggs, olives, tomatoes and tea.
- C That's right. OK, Dylan, it's time to start cooking.
- D Actually, it's time for my coffee break!

CD1 -82

- 1 English | musician | Russia | nationality
- 2 cheese chicken sandwich teacher
- 3 jam vegetables engineer jazz

CD2 2

JASON Granddad, when were you born? ALBERT I was born in 1953.

- J So you were thirteen in ... 1966.
- A Yes, that's right.
- J And where were you on your thirteenth birthday?
- A I was in Liverpool with my parents.

- Oh, I remember that birthday party very well. It was 30th July 1966, the day England won the World Cup.
- J Really? Wow!
- A Yes, the match was in the afternoon and my party was in the evening.
- J That's amazing! Where was the party?
- A It was at my parents' house and in the street!
- J Was it a big party?
- A Yes, it was. All my friends were there and lots of my parents' friends were there too. There was music and food and dancing in the street it was a very happy evening!
- J It sounds like a great party. Was the food good?
- A Yes, there were lots of sandwiches and chicken and ice cream, and a birthday cake with a big football on it.
- J Were your grandparents there?
- A No, they weren't. They were in London at the World Cup Final!

CD2

I was /wəz/ in Liverpool with my parents. All my friends were /wə/ at the party. Our house wasn't very big. My brothers weren't there. Where was /wəz/ the party? Where were /wə/ his grandparents? Were /wə/ his friends there? Yes, they were. No, they weren't. Was /wəz/ the food good? Yes, it was. No, it wasn't. When were /wə/ you born? I was /wəz/ born in nineteen fifty-three. Where was /wəz/ Matt born? He was /wəz/ born in Liverpool.

CD2 > 6

a August 16th b 1971 c two d 1986 e twelve f \$2 billion g 1999

CD2 > 10

- 1 My parents study Italian. My parents studied Italian.
- 2 They finished work at six. They finish work at six.
- 3 They stayed in on Saturday. They stay in on Saturday.
- 4 I live in London. I lived in London.
- 5 My parents work in Germany. My parents worked in Germany.
- 6 I visit him every week. I visited him every week.

VIDEO 5 CD2 12

- 1 EMILY How was your weekend? TIM Terrible. I was ill all weekend.
- E Oh, dear. What was wrong?
- T I had a really bad cold.
- E What a shame. Are you OK now?
- T Yes, much better, thanks. And how was your weekend?
- E It was OK. I stayed at home on Saturday.
- T Oh, right. What did you do?
- E I did the washing, checked my emails, watched TV you know, the usual.

- And then on Sunday I went to the cinema.
- T Oh, nice. What did you see?
- E It was called A Day in the Life.
- T Oh, yes. What was it like?
- E It was great. I really enjoyed it.
- T Yeah, I'd like to see that. Oh, we're late for the meeting. Let's go!
- 2 SIMON Hi. How are you? RACHEL I'm very well, thanks. I went away for the weekend – to Spain!
- S Wow! Where did you go?
- R We went to Madrid. It was wonderful!
- S Oh, great! Who did you go with?
- R My friend, Ingrid.
- S And where did you stay?
- R We stayed with some friends from university.
- S Oh, nice.
- R What about you? How was your weekend?
- S Oh, not very interesting. I worked all Sunday.
- R Really? What did you do?
- S I wrote that report you wanted. It took me 10 hours.
- R You're joking! When did you finish it?
- S At 11 o'clock last night. Here it is.
- R That's great! Thanks, Simon.
- S No problem.
- R OK, let's start this meeting. Where are Emily and Tim?
- S Here they are.
- T Hi there. Sorry we're late. Emily wanted to get a coffee.
- E Tim!

CD2 >13

- 1 TIM I was ill all weekend. EMILY Oh, dear.
- 2 TIM I had a really bad cold. EMILY What a shame.
- 3 EMILY I stayed at home on Saturday. TIM Oh, right.
- 4 EMILY I went to the cinema.
 TIM Oh, nice.
- 5 RACHEL I went away for the weekend to Spain!
 SIMON Wow!
- 6 RACHEL We went to Madrid. It was wonderful!
 SIMON Oh, great!
- 7 SIMON I worked all Sunday. RACHEL Really?
- 8 SIMON It took me 10 hours. RACHEL You're joking!

CD2 -16

/p/ hot | coffee | shopping | bottle
/əu/ old | sofa | mobile | open
/n/ son | wonderful | sometimes | comfortable
/ə/ actor | tomato | computer | director

CD2 > 17

They didn't like each other at first.
They didn't finish their course.
They didn't have any money.
They didn't get the money for a month.
They didn't have a bank account.

CD2 > 18

- PRESENTER Welcome to Book of the Day. Today we have the writer Wes Clark, talking about his new book, *Planet Google*. First of all, Wes, is it true? Did you really write this book in twelve weeks?
- WES Yes, I did. And I enjoyed writing it because Larry Page and Sergey Brin are really interesting people.
- P OK so, let's start at the beginning. Where are they from?
- W Well, Larry Page is American but Sergey Brin was born in Russia. His family went to live in the USA in 1979, when Sergey was six. But his mother wasn't very happy about going to the USA.
- P Did she want to stay in Russia?
- W Yes, she did.
- P So did Sergey's parents find work in the USA?
- W Yes, they did. Sergey's father got a job at Maryland University. He was a mathematics teacher there.
- P And what about Sergey? Did he study mathematics?
- W Yes, he did. He studied mathematics and computer science at the same university.
- P At the same university as his father?
- W Yes, that's right.
- P Did Larry go to Maryland University?
- W No, he didn't. He went to Michigan State University. His mother and father were computer science teachers there.
- P Really? So Larry was at the same university as his parents!
- W Yes, that's correct. And Larry's family always had computers in their home. He was the first student in his school to do his homework on a computer.
- P Right. And then Page and Brin went to Stanford University, and now, of course, they're both very rich ...

CD2 - 19

Did Sergey and Larry meet in nineteen ninety-four? Did they like each other at first? Did Sergey go to Maryland University? Did Larry's parents teach mathematics? Did Sergey study computer science? Yes, he did. No, he didn't. Did Sergey and Larry launch Google in nineteen ninety-nine? Yes, they did. No, they didn't.

CD2 > 21

- 1 I can't find my mobile.
- 2 You can use my phone if you want.
- 3 A lot of people can't understand it.

- 4 You can buy 3D TVs online.
- 5 I can't turn off the TV!
- 6 Can you download TV programmes?

CD2 > 22

You can watch TV programmes online. You can use my phone if you want. I can't find my mobile. A lot of people can't understand it. You could only get three channels. You couldn't record TV programmes. Can you watch TV online? Yes, you can. No, you can't. Could you record programmes in nineteen seventy-four? Yes, you could. No, you couldn't.

GD2 23

ANSWERS 2 could 3 could 4 could 5 couldn't 6 could 7 couldn't 8 can't 9 can 10 can 11 can't

CD2 - 24

damage, damaged | sail, sailed | die, died | receive, received | crash, crashed | save, saved | buy, bought | lose, lost | find, found | put, put | say, said | tell, told

GD2 - 25

ANNOUNCER It's one o'clock and here's George Lucan with the news.

NEWSREADER Över sixty people are in hospital after a train crash in Scotland this morning. The train was on its way to London but crashed only ten minutes after it left Edinburgh.

Fifty-three people died in storms in Florida last night. The storms damaged hundreds of homes and many people are without water and electricity.

Bill and Nancy Potter, who want to be

the first eighty-year-old couple to sail round the world, are missing off the coast of Australia. Their family and friends became worried when the couple didn't arrive in Sydney last weekend as planned. Helicopters are now looking for the couple and their boat.

And finally, supermarket manager Joe Hall won over thirteen million pounds in last night's lottery - thanks to his dog! Joe told reporters today that his dog, Max, chose the numbers!

A That's the news this Thursday lunchtime. And now over to Jan Adams for the travel news.

VIDEO 6 CD2 26

- 1 PAUL I really enjoyed that burger. CLARE Yeah, the salad was good too.
- P By the way, did you read about the winner of this week's lottery?
- C No. How much did he win?
- P Over 13 million pounds.
- C Really?
- P Yeah, and guess what? His dog chose the numbers for him!

- C You're joking! How?
- P He wrote 50 numbers on envelopes, put biscuits in them and put them around the house.
- C Right.
- P And then he used the numbers of the first six envelopes that the dog found. And now he's a millionaire!
- C That's amazing!
- 2 WAYNE Did you hear about that train crash? ALISON No, where was it?
- W Somewhere near Edinburgh.
- A Oh, dear.
- W Yes. Over sixty people are in hospital.
- A Oh no, that's terrible.
- W Yes, I know.

JOSH Mum, Dad, can we talk about the holiday now?

- W Yes, OK. Let's have a look ...
- 3 TIM Here's your coffee. EMILY Thanks a lot.
- T You have family in the USA, don't you?
- E Yes, why?
- T Did you hear about the storms in Florida?
- E Yes, isn't it awful? I saw it on the news this morning.
- I Is your family OK?
- E Yes, they're fine. They don't live in Florida. They live near Washington.
- T Oh, right. Oh, we're late for a meeting again!
- E Come on, let's go.
- 4 CHRIS Did you read about the eightyyear-old couple and their boat? LOUISE No, what happened?
- C Their boat was damaged in a storm and they were missing for two days.
- L Oh, dear. Are they OK?
- C Yes. A helicopter found them yesterday off the coast of Australia.
- L Oh, that's good.
- C Maybe we can sail around the world when we're eighty.
- L You're joking, I hope.
- C Yes, of course.

CD2 >27

Did you hear about that train crash? |
No, where was it? | Did you read about the
eighty-year-old couple and their boat? |
No, what happened? | Oh, that's good. | Oh
no, that's terrible. | Yes, isn't it awful? | Oh,
dear. Are they OK? | Really? | You're joking!

CD2 28

Tonight's programme looks at the work of Shigeru Miyamoto, the world-famous video game designer. Shigeru was born in Kyoto, Japan, on November 16th 1952. He studied art at Kanazawa College of Art from 1970 to 1975. Between 1998 and 2010 he won awards for his work in the USA, the UK, France and Spain. But Shigeru lives a very

ordinary life. He's married with two children and he usually goes to work by bike. In his free time he plays the guitar and he writes music. He once said, "They say video games are bad for you. But that's what they said about rock 'n' roll." Shigeru designed the first Mario Brothers game in 1983 and he says Mario is his favourite video game character. Shigeru was the first video game designer to tell a story in his video games. All Mario Brothers video games have a hero, a princess and a villain ...

CD2 >31

Listening Test (See Teacher's Book)

CD2 32

TIP . Words in pink are weak forms.

- A JOSIE Where were you born, Clive? CLIVE I was born in a small town called Burford, near Oxford.
- J How long did you live there?
- C We lived there for 12 years and then we moved to London. But my grandparents still live in Burford.
- J What's it like?
- C Oh, it's really nice. There are lots of beautiful old buildings and interesting shops. There isn't a station, but there's one at Charlbury, about five miles away.
- J Are there any good pubs in Burford?
- C Yes, there are. In the town centre there are four or five really nice pubs and all of them have fantastic food.
- J So when did you last go there?
- C About six months ago. I was at my grandparents' house for New Year.
- J Oh, nice.
- B VANESSA Hi, James. Did you have a good weekend?

 JAMES Yes, it was OK, thanks. I stayed at home all weekend. What about you?
- V I went to visit my brother in Ireland.
- J Really? Where does he live?
- V In a small village called Eyeries. It's about two hours from Cork airport.
- J Oh, right. What's it like?
- V Well, there's only one road, and all of the houses are different colours!
- J Really? It sounds lovely.
- V Yes, it is. There are lots of beautiful beaches nearby and it's a good place to go for walks.
- J Is there a hotel?
- V No, there isn't. And there aren't any restaurants. But there are two bars and a couple of shops.
- J Oh, OK.
- V If you want to go there one day, I'm sure you can stay with my brother.
- J Oh, thanks a lot.
- C BRIAN Hi, Aunt Alice. Happy birthday! ALICE Hello, Brian. You remembered!
- B Of course. I couldn't forget my favourite

- aunt's birthday!
- A Oh, thank you. And how are things with you? Do you like living in Brisbane?
- B Yes, I love it here. There are lots of things to do and the people are very friendly.
- A And how's your new flat?
- B It's great. There's a nice beach about five minutes away and there are lots of bars and restaurants. It's a great place to go out at night.
- A Oh, that's nice, dear. I'm pleased that you're happy there.
- B Yes, I am. And how's Uncle Thomas?
- A Oh, he's very well, thanks ...

CD2 37

ESTATE AGENT Hello. Can I help you? JOHN Hi, I'm John, and this is my wife, Becky.

BECKY Hello.

- EA Nice to meet you.
- J You too. We'd like some information about the flat in Park Road, please. We saw it on your website.
- EA Of course. What would you like to know?
- J Er, firstly, is there any furniture?
- EA Yes, there are some chairs, a sofa, beds
 it's fully furnished. But, er, there isn't
 a TV.
- J Oh, that's OK. And the bedrooms are they big?
- EA Er, well, one bedroom's very big, but the other is, er, quite small. It's fine for a child.
- B That's OK. But we haven't got any children.
- EA Right. Well, there's a lot of space for two people.
- J Hmm. And the bathroom. Has it got a shower?
- EA Yes, there's a shower and a bath. It's very nice.
- J OK. Is there anything else, Becky?
- B Yes, what's in the kitchen?
- EA There's a cooker, a fridge and a washing machine. And I think there are some chairs and a table.
- B Right. And are there any shops near the flat?
- EA Yes, there are some shops only 5 minutes away. And it's near the station.
- J That's not bad for £800 a month.
- B Yes, maybe.
- EA It is a beautiful flat. Would you like to see it?
- J Er, yes I think so, don't you?
- B Yes, definitely.
- EA Great! What about, er, today at 3 o'clock?
- J Yes, 3 o'clock is fine. Can we meet at the flat?

CD2 39

ANSWERS 2 some 3 any 4 some 5 any 6 some 7 some 8 any 9 a 10 any 11 some 12 some 13 a

VIDEO 7 CD2 40

- 1 SALES ASSISTANT 1 Hi. Can I help you?
 - PAUL Yes, please. Have you got any guide books for London?
- SA1 Yes, they're over there.
- P Oh yes, I see. Thanks. ... I'll have this one, please. How much is this map?
- SA1 This one is ... £5.95.
- P OK, I'll have the map too.
- SA1 Sure. ...
- P And can I have four stamps for Europe, please?
- SA1 I'm sorry, we don't sell stamps for Europe.
- P No problem.
- SA1 Anything else?
- P No, that's all, thanks.
- SA1 Right, that's £19.45, please.
- P Here you are.
- SA1 Would you like a bag?
- P No, thanks. I've got one.
- SA1 OK. Here's your change and your receipt.
- P Thank you.
- SA1 Have a nice day.
- P You too. Bye.
- SA1 Bye.
- 2 SALES ASSISTANT 2 Do you need any help?
 CLARE Oh, yes, please. How much are
- these lamps? SA2 The big ones are £25 and the small ones are £17.50.
- C Um, OK. I'll have this one, please.
- SA2 Of course. Would you like anything else?
- C Yes, do you sell suitcases?
- SA2 Yes, we do. They're on the second floor.
- C OK. I'll buy this first.
- SA2 Right. ... Right, that's £17.50, please.
- C Thanks.
- SA2 ... Your pin number, please. ... OK. Here you are. Your receipt's in the bag.
- C Great. Thanks for your help. Bye.
- SA2 Goodbye.

GD2 >43

/ɔ:/ shorts | strawberry | tall | August |
bought | divorced
/ɔ:/ shirt | Thursday | word | birthday |
person | skirt

CD2 >45

FRANK Janet? It's Frank.

JANET Frank! Where are you?

- F I'm at the station. The train was late.
 I'm waiting for a taxi.
- J But we've got that meeting with the Tamada brothers at 10 o'clock!
- F Yes, I know. Are they there yet?
- J Yes, they're sitting in your office.
- F Oh no!
- And they aren't looking very happy.
- F Hold on ... here's a taxi. Start the meeting without me, but take notes.

- Oh, and Janet?
- J Yes?
- F Remember this isn't your contract. It's my contract!
- J Of course it is, Frank ... bye! Liz?
- L Yes?
- J Where's Adriana?
- L Oh, she's working at home today.
- J Oh, dear. I need someone to take notes at the Tamada meeting.
- L I'm not doing anything important at the moment. Do you want me to do it?
- J Actually, I want you to finish those reports.
- L Well, Danny isn't doing anything. I can ask him.
- J OK, thanks.

CD2 >46

I'm waiting for a taxi. | They're sitting in your office. | They aren't looking very happy. | She's working at home today. | I'm not doing anything important at the moment. | Danny isn't doing anything.

CD2 >47

ANSWERS 2's reading 3 isn't reading ('s not reading) 4's studying 5'm waiting 6 aren't working ('re not working) 7'm going

CB2 48

FRANK Hello, Liz, it's Frank.

LIZ Hi, Frank. Where are you calling from?

- F I'm in a taxi. There was an accident or something. We're not moving.
- L Oh, dear.
- F Look, Janet isn't answering her phone. What's she doing?
- L She's talking to the Tamada brothers.
 And Danny's taking notes.
- F Oh, right. Where are they having the meeting?
- L Er ... in Janet's office.
- F In Janet's office? Oh no! Liz, please go and tell Janet not to sign that contract.
- L OK, Frank. See you soon. And hurry up!

GD2 - 49

FRANK Hi, Liz. Are they still in Janet's office?

LIZ Yes, they are. Good luck!

- F Right ... Hello, everybody. Sorry
 I'm late.
- J Er, hello, Frank. Mr Tamada and I are just signing the contract.
- F No, you're not, Janet. I'm signing the contract.
- J OK, Frank. It's all yours.
- F I'm so sorry I wasn't here when you arrived. There was an accident and I ...

CD2 -50

ANSWERS 2 Are you having a nice time? 3 What are you doing? 4 Are the kids doing their homework? 5 What are they doing?

CD2 -51

Are you working late this evening? Are you having a nice time? What are you doing? Are the kids doing their homework? What are they doing?

CD2 > 52

PRESENTER And with all this snow, let's go over to Jan Adams in the centre of London for this morning's traffic news.

- JAN Well, people aren't very happy here in the city – there aren't any trains, traffic isn't moving and there are problems on the tube and the buses. Excuse me, sir, are you on your way to work?
- FIRST MAN Yes, I am. I usually go by train, but I'm taking the bus today and I'm very late.
- J What time do you usually start work?
- FM I start at eight. And it's eight thirty now. And I'm still waiting for a bus! Why can't they do something about the roads?
- J Thank you, sir. Excuse me, madam, are you going to work?

WOMAN Yes, I am.

- J And do you always walk to work?
- W No, I usually cycle, but I'm walking today because the roads are so bad.
- J So how long is your journey to work on a normal day?
- W About twenty minutes.
- OK. And how long is it taking today?
- W Well, I left home at half past seven, that's about an hour ago.
- J Well, good luck. Excuse me, sir, are you on your way to work?

SECOND MAN Yes, Jam.

- J And how do you usually travel to work?
- SM When I'm working in London, I usually take the tube.
- J Right. And how are you getting to work today?
- SM Well, today I'm walking because of the snow.
- J And where are you from?
- SM I'm from Canada.
- J Oh, so you know all about snow.
- SM Yes, it snows a lot in Canada every winter. And we never have these problems! Why isn't anyone doing anything about the roads?
- J Thank you. Well as you can hear, everyone's asking the same question today – why can't they do something about the roads?
- P Thanks, Jan. That was Jan Adams reporting from the centre of London.

CD2 > 54

ANSWERS 2 work 3 'm working 4 'm sitting 5 'm writing 6 don't work 7 's snowing 8 drive 9 visit 10 're staying 11 is answering 12 'm watching 13 don't watch

CD2 > 55

ANSWERS 2 Is (she) working ... 3 ... is (she) doing ... 4 Does (she) work ... 5 ... do (Lenny and Eve usually) do ... 6 ... are (they) doing ... 7 Does (Eve normally) watch ... 8 ... is (she) watching ...

CD2 >56 CD2 >57

- 1 MESSAGE Hello, this is Alan Wick's voicemail. I'm sorry I can't take your call at the moment. If you leave a message, I'll get back to you. Thanks for calling. [end of [CD2] 56]
- EMILY Hello, it's Emily Wise here, from the contracts office at 3DUK. Can we meet tomorrow morning at about 10? I need to talk to you about the new contract with Morris Computers. Can you call me back? Thanks. Bye.
- 2 MESSAGE Welcome to the NRL voicemail service. I'm sorry, but the person you called is not available. Please leave your message after the tone. [end of 602 56]
- EMILY Hi, Clare, it's Emily. Would you like to meet for coffee after work? Call me later – I'm at work, Bye!

TICKET SELLER Hello, Queen's Theatre.
Can I help you?

- EMILY Oh, hi. Are there any tickets available for Not Now on Saturday?
- TS Yes, there are.
- E How much are they?
- TS They're £24.50 and £38.
- E £24.50 and £38. OK, thanks a lot. I'll think about it. Bye.
- TS Goodbye.
- 4 [CD2 56 only] I'm sorry. There's no one available to take your call. Please try later.

VIDEO 8 GD2 58

- 1 TIM Did you check that contract for Morris Computers? EMILY Yes, I did. It's fine, I think.
- T Good. We need to check this with Alan Wick too. ... Hello, 3DUK. Can I help you?

CLARE Hello, can I speak to Emily, please?

- T Hold on a moment. She's here.
- E Hello, Emily Wise.
- C Hi. It's Clare. I got your message.
- E Good. Do you want to go for a coffee after work?
- C Sure. Is six o'clock OK?

- E Yes, that's fine. Let's meet at Café Uno.
- C OK. See you there at six. Bye.
- E Bye. ... Sorry about that, Tim. Right, where were we?
- T The Morris Computers contract. We need to talk to Alan Wick.
- E Yes, I'm waiting for him to call me back.
- T Great. And we need to talk to Chris Morris.
- E Yes, I know. I'll call him now.
- 2 LOUISE Hi, love. CHRIS Hi.
- L I'm going to Sophie's for a coffee. Do you want to come?
- C No, I can't, I'm sorry. I've got a conference call in a minute and it's quite important.
- L OK, see you later.
- C Bye.
- L Bye.
- C ... Hello?

EMILY Hello, is that Chris Morris?

- C Speaking.
- E This is Emily Wise from 3DUK.
- C Hello, Emily. Look, I've got a conference call in a minute. Can I call you back in an hour?
- E Of course. Call me on my mobile.
- C Right. I'll call you later.
- E Thanks a lot. Bye.
- C Bye. ... Hello? ... Jason, good to hear from you. ... Hello, Andrea. How are things?

CD2 >61

- 1 milk | his | ill | excited | window | interesting | chicken
- 2 teeth | he's | ski | beach | meeting | thirteen | machine

CD3

JESSICA When did you last go on holiday, Andy?

ANDY In September last year.

- J Where did you go?
- A I went to Cape Town for two weeks.
- J Oh, great! I really want to go to South Africa. Did you have a good time?
- A Yes, I did. It's a fantastic city and the people were really friendly.
- J Who did you go with?
- A Nigel, a friend from university.
- J Oh, right. What did you do there?
- A Well, on the first day we went on a guided tour of the city, which was very interesting.
- J Right.
- A And the next day we went to Table Mountain for a picnic. Lots of tourists do that.
- J Did you walk up the mountain?
- A No, we went by cable car. The view from the top was amazing!
- J And where did you stay?
- A We stayed with Nigel's brother. He lives in the centre of Cape Town.

- J Oh, that was lucky. And how did you travel around?
- A For the first week we travelled by public transport, and then we rented a car for the second week. We drove to a wildlife park to see some elephants. It was a beautiful place and there were elephants outside our room every morning!
- J Ah, that sounds fantastic! What else did you do?
- A Well, we went to Robben Island to visit the prison. That was really interesting. We saw the cell where Nelson Mandela lived for 27 years.
- J Wow!
- A And on our last day we went on a boat trip to see the whales. That was the best day of the holiday, I think I took lots of photos.
- J It sounds like you had a great time.
- A Yes, it was amazing. I didn't want to come home.

CD3 >3

to see some elephants → We drove to a wildlife park to see some elephants. I to visit the prison → We went to Robben Island to visit the prison. I to see the whales → We went on a boat trip to see the whales.

CD3 >4

PATRICK OK, so it's a week in Cairo or a week in Sharm El Sheikh.

JULIET Most people just call it Sharm, I think.

- P OK. Where do you want to go, Juliet? Sharm or Cairo?
- J Well, I think Sharm's more beautiful than Cairo.
- P Yes, it is. But Cairo's more interesting.
- J Yes, maybe. But Sharm looks nicer than Cairo. It's a beautiful place and the diving looks amazing!
- P Yes, but Cairo's a fantastic city. There are lots of things to do there. We can go on boat trips along the Nile, visit the Pyramids, go to the Egyptian Museum, and, er, go shopping?
- J Maybe. But Cairo's busier than Sharm.
- P Well, all capital cities are busy. And the hotel in Cairo is cheaper.
- J We don't need to spend a lot of money when we're there. I'm happy to go to the beach every day and go snorkelling.
- P OK, but you know I'm not really a beach person.
- J Well, you can rent a motorbike and go into the desert, or, er, go on a camel ride.
- P Yes, I know. But I still think Cairo's better than Sharm.
- J Sharm's probably safer too, especially at night. And it's more popular with young people. I just want go to the beach and relax, Patrick. It's a holiday!
- P Well, maybe we can go to the beach near Cairo, you know, just for a day or two.

And there are islands on the Nile, I think – maybe you can go snorkelling there.
And then *next* year we can go anywhere you want.

CD3 >6

VIC Hi, Patrick, how are you?

PATRICK Hi, Vic. I'm fine, thanks. Just back from holiday, actually.

- V Really? Where did you go?
- P Er, we went to Egypt, a place on the Red Sea called Sharm El Sheikh.
- V Yes, I know it. Very nice. But I thought you didn't like beach holidays.
- P Me? Oh yes, I *love* the beach. I chose the holiday, actually – Juliet wanted to go to Cairo!
- V Really?

VIDEO 9 CD3 7

WAYNE Well, it's Saturday tomorrow. What would you like to do?

ALISON I'd like to go to the beach.

JOSH Oh, no. Not the beach again. We went to the beach last weekend.

- W He's right. I'd rather go somewhere different.
- A Well, would you like to go to London?
- W Yes, that's a good idea.
- A We can spend the day at Regent's Park. It's really beautiful and there's lots to do there.
- W That sounds good. Do you want to do that, Josh?
- J Do what, Dad?
- W Do you want to go to Regent's Park?
- J Not really. I'd rather stay at home.
- A But Regent's Park is a great place to visit. You can go on boat rides and there's a really good open air theatre.
- J Mmm. Theatre. That's really interesting. Anyway, what about Daisy? Why aren't you asking her?
- W You know your sister works at the restaurant every Saturday.
- J Lucky her.
- W OK, so where do you want to go?
- J I want to go to Longleat.
- W Oh, I don't think so. It's a long way.
- J But some friends from school went there last week. And there's a safari park where you drive around and look at all the lions and tigers and monkeys from your car.
- A That sounds quite dangerous.
- J It isn't if you don't open the windows!
- W And you can see animals in Regent's Park – that's where London Zoo is!
- J But I went to London Zoo last year with the school. I want to go somewhere different.
- A OK, let's go to Longleat. Would you like to ask a friend to come?
- J Yeah, OK. Can I ask Elliott?
- A Fine. Tell him to be here tomorrow morning at eight.
- J Great. Thanks, Mum.

W OK, that's decided, then. Now, what's on TV?

CD3 >11

2 mountain 3 Wednesday 4 answer 5 wrong 6 postcard 7 friendly 8 breakfast

CD3 12

DOCTOR Hello, Mrs Lee. MRS LEE Hello, doctor.

- D So you're here for a check-up.
- L Yes.
- D Right. First let's see what you weigh. Over here, please. Mmm. 70 kilos. Four kilos more than six months ago.
- L Really?
- D Yes. Do you do much exercise?
- L Well, with three children, I don't really have time.
- D Do you walk to school with them?
- L No, not very often. Maybe once or twice a month. That's because we're usually late, so I take them in the car. Then I drive to work.
- D And you work in an office, is that right?
- L Well, yes.
- D A lot of sitting ... Ah, but you started going to a gym last March. How often do you go?
- L Er, not very often. Perhaps three times a month.
- D You should do some exercise three times a week, really.
- L Yes, I know, but my husband works away from home, so it's difficult to get to the gym.
- D Maybe ... you should get a dog. Then you and the children can take it for walks twice a day.
- L Maybe. The children would love a dog.
- D And what about food? What do you usually eat?
- I I don't have much time to cook in the week so we have things like pizzas and sausages. And I eat quite a lot of biscuits. I know I shouldn't, but they're so nice with coffee.
- D Well, you shouldn't eat so many pizzas and biscuits. And you should eat more fruit and vegetables and do more exercise. But you probably know that.
- L Er, yes, I'll try.
- D Right. Let's listen to your heart.

CD3 -13

ANSWERS 1 should 2 shouldn't 3 should 4 shouldn't 5 should 6 shouldn't

CD3 >14

TINA OK, Leo. I've got four people for the Break poster. See what you think.

LEO Right. Where's the first one? Hmm, he's not bad.

- T Yes, I quite like him. He looks friendly, the type of person who buys a lot of chocolate.
- L I can see that!

- T Yes, he's a bit overweight, isn't he? Is that a problem?
- L Er, I'm not sure. Who else have you got?
- T Well, there's him.
- L He's better, maybe. He's tall and good-looking.
- T Yes, he's very good-looking. But I don't know about the long hair.
- L Yes, you've got a point there. Who's next?
- T What about her?
- L Yes, she's nice. Slim, long dark hair, and she's very attractive.
- T Yes, she's beautiful but, do we want a beautiful person on this poster?
- L I'm not sure. Is that all of them?
- T No, there's one more.
- L Hmm, she's older than the other models, isn't she?
- T Yes, but maybe that's good. Older people buy a lot of chocolate. And she's attractive – she looks very friendly and happy, I think.
- L Yes, she does.
- And eating chocolate makes people feel happy.
- L Yes, you're right. Well, let's choose.
- T OK. Do we want a man or a woman?

CD8 > 15

TINA OK. Do we want a man or a woman? LEO I think that we want a woman.

- T Why's that?
- Well, women buy more chocolate than men. So they want to see a woman on the poster.
- T Yes, good point.
- L And people know that chocolate can make you overweight – but everyone wants to be thin.
- T So we want someone slim.
- And people always think they're young

 so they want to see young people
 on posters. Which means ...
- T Zoë. OK. Let's have Zoë. Fine. Shall I ask her to come for a meeting?
- L Yes, good idea. Right, what else do we need to talk about?

CD3 > 16

TINA Hi, Leo. I hear everyone really likes the *Break* posters. Well done.

LEO Thanks a lot.

- T And I hear you've got a new girlfriend.
- L Er, yes, I have.
- T What's she like?
- L Well, she's friendly and outgoing. And she's very beautiful.
- T Oh, right. When did you meet her?
- L Er, about three weeks ago.
- T And what does she like doing?
- L Well, she likes clubbing and going to restaurants. The same as me, really.
- T OK. What does she look like?
- L Well, she's tall and slim, and she's got long dark hair.

- T How did you meet her?
- L Oh, er, we met here, you know, in the office.
- T Really? What does she do?
- L Er, she's a model.
- T Leo, what's your new girlfriend's name?
- L It's, er, Zoë. You know, from the Break advert.
- T Oh, really.

CD3 > 18

1 What's she like? 2 What does she look like? 3 What's he like? 4 What does she like doing? 5 What does he look like? 6 What are they like?

CD3 19

I've got a stomach ache. I've got a headache. I've got toothache. I've got a sore throat. I've got a cold. I've got a cough. I've got a temperature. I feel ill. I feel terrible. I feel sick. I feel better. My back hurts. My arm hurts. My foot hurts. My leg hurts.

VIDEO 10 CD3 20

- SIMON Hi, Rachel. RACHEL Hello, Simon. You don't look very well. Are you OK?
- S No, I feel terrible.
- R Oh, dear. What's wrong?
- S I've got a terrible stomach ache.
- R Well, maybe you shouldn't go to work today.
- S I know, but Emily and I have got an important meeting this morning. It's with some people from Morris Computers.
- R Well, why don't you call them and cancel it?
- S Yes, maybe you're right. We can have the meeting next week instead.
- R Good. And then go home.
- S OK. That's a good idea.
- R And maybe you should go to the doctor.
- S Yes, perhaps.
- R OK. Bye, Simon. I hope you get better
- S Bye, Rachel. Thanks a lot. ... Hello, is that Chris Morris? ... Look, I'm sorry, but we can't have our meeting today. I'm not very well. ... Yes, next Tuesday morning's fine with me too ...
- 2 EMILY Hi, Tim.

TIM Hi, Emily. Are you alright?

- E No, I don't feel very well.
- T Oh, dear. What's the matter?
- E I've got a headache and a sore throat.
- T Why don't you go home?
- E I can't. I've got a meeting this morning. It's really important.
- T Who's your meeting with?
- E Simon, and some people from Morris Computers.

- T Well, Simon called about ten minutes ago and left a message. He's ill and he's not coming in today.
- E Oh, no!
- T And the meeting with Morris Computers is next Tuesday morning now.
- E Oh, so there isn't a meeting today. That's great. So I can go home.
- T Yes. Take the day off. You should be in bed. And don't come to work tomorrow.
- E OK. Thanks a lot.
- T No problem. Get well soon.
- E Thanks, Tim. Bye.

GD8 > 22

ANSWERS 2b 3a 4b 5a 6b

CD3 25

/æ/ hat | rabbit | contract | family /ɑ:/ bath | answers | arm | dance /eɪ/ lazy | radio | games | famous /ə/ ago | another | elephant | island

CD3 > 27

- 1 MEG Happy New Year, Jack! JACK Thanks, Meg. And happy New Year to you.
- M Any New Year's resolutions?
- J Yes, I have, actually. I'm not going to work until ten every night. I'm going to work less and have more fun. And I'm going to have a holiday this year.
- M Good! Where are you going?
- J I don't know. Somewhere I can relax.
- M Good idea.
- J And what about you? What are you going to do this year?
- M I'm going to move to Australia.
- J Wow! When did you decide that?
- M Oh, a couple of months ago.
- J That's fantastic news! Where are you going to live?
- M In Melbourne. I've got family there.
- J Well, that's great. Good luck.
- M Thanks a lot.
- 2 ED Hello, David. Hi, Val. DAVID Hi, Ed. Happy New Year!
- E Happy New Year to you too!
- VAL Have you got any New Year's resolutions?
- E Yes, I'm going to do a computer course.
- D Oh, right. Why computers?
- E I want to get a new job. The one I've got now is really boring.
- V Where are you going to do the course?
- E I don't know. I'm going to start looking for courses next week.
- D Right. Well, good luck with that.
- E Thanks. And what about you? Any New Year's resolutions?
- D Yes, we're going to get fit.
- E Oh, right.
- D And Val's going to stop smoking.
- V Yes, I am. And David's going to lose weight. Well, he says he is.

D Er, yes, I want to lose eight kilos. I'm going to do more exercise and I'm not going to eat sweet things any more.

WOMAN Chocolate cake, anyone?

- D No, not for me, thank you.
- W Oh, go on. It's really good!
- D Well, er ... just a little, thank you.
- V David!
- D Oh, didn't I say? I'm going to start my New Year's resolution after the party.

CD3 > 30

ERIC Wow, Jenny, that was a difficult exam. And I revised really hard for this one.

JENNY Yes, me too. Do you think you passed?

- E I don't know. The first part was OK, but I couldn't answer the last two questions.
- J Yes, they were really difficult. Hi, Melanie. How did it go?
- MELANIE It wasn't easy, was it? But it's over, that's the important thing!
- J Absolutely! So how are you going to celebrate tonight, Melanie?
- M Well, there's a big end-of-exams party at Caroline's house, so I might go to that. Or I might stay at home and watch a film. What about you, Eric?
- E Well, first I'm going to go home and sleep.
- M Yes, good idea.
- E Then I'm going to meet some friends in town at seven. After that, I don't know. We might go to Caroline's, or we might go to that new club on Market Street.
- M And what about you, Jenny?
- J Well, first I'm going to phone my mum. But I'm not sure what I'm going to do this evening. I might go to the party or I might go out for a meal with Sam.
- M Anyway, I'm sure of one thing.
- E What's that?
- M That's the last exam I'm ever going to take in my life!
- J Yeah, me too.
- E And what about the summer? Have you got any plans? ...

GD8>31

I might go to the party. I might stay at home and watch a film. I might go out for a meal with Sam. We might go to Caroline's. We might go to that new club on Market Street.

CD3 > 33

ANSWERS 2a 3b 4a 5b 6a

CD3>34

ERIC And what about after the holidays?

Are you going to look for a job?

JENNY Yes, Sam and I are going to Spain in September. We're going to look for a job there.

MELANIE What kind of job?

- J I don't know. We might work for a holiday company or something. Sam wants to teach English.
- M My cousin's going to teach English in Argentina next year.
- J Yes, that's a good idea. I might do that.
- M And what about you, Eric?
- E I'm going to do a business course in London.
- M Really? How are you going to pay for it?
- E Good question. My parents are going to help me.
- M Oh, that's lucky. Business courses are really expensive.
- E Yes, I know. I need to get £10,000 before September.
- J So are you going to sell your car?
- E Yes, I am, actually. Why, do you want to buy it?
- J I might. How much do you want for it?
- E Oh, about thirty thousand pounds.
- J Yeah, right. You mean the cost of a business course!
- E Well, and the rent for a nice flat in London.
- M You don't need to do a course, Eric. You're already a businessman!

©D3>35

PAULINE Hello, Seaton Holiday Homes, can I help you?

- ALISON Oh, hello, I'm phoning about your advert for Benton House.
- P Of course. When would you like to stay there?
- A From July 14th for 2 weeks. Is it available then?
- P Let me have a look. Er, yes, it is.
- A Great. How much is it?
- P Two weeks in July, er, that's £620 per week.
- A Oh, that's more expensive than the advert.
- P Well, it's the school holidays, you see. Everything's more expensive then.
- A OK. Is Hill Place cheaper?
- P Yes, it is. In July it's, er ... £595 per week.
- A And is it available for those two weeks?
- P Let me check ... Oh, it's available the first week, but not the second. Sorry.
- A Right ... OK, can I book Benton House, please?
- P Certainly. Can I have your name, please?
- A Yes, my name's Alison Wilson.
- P And do you have an email address, Mrs Wilson? ...

GD3 36

- 1 Go along Abbott Street and it's on the right, next to the bus station.
- 2 Go along the High Street, past the station, and it's on the left, opposite the department store.
- 3 Go along the High Street, past the department store, and turn right. Go along North Road and it's on the left.

4 Go along Abbott Street and turn right by the river. That's West Street. Go along that street for about 100 metres and it's on the right, next to the car park.

VIDEO 11 CD3 37

1 ALISON Excuse me. Is there a newsagent's near here? MAN 1 Yes, there's one in Berry Street.

A Where's that?

- M1 Go along this road and turn right. That's Berry Street. Go past the pub and the newsagent's is on the right, opposite the supermarket.
- A So I go along this road and turn right. Then I go past the pub and ...
- M1 And the newsagent's is on the right.
- A Opposite the supermarket. Oh, great, thanks a lot.
- M1 No problem.
- 2 WAYNE Excuse me. MAN 2 Can I help you?
- W Yes, where's the post office?
- M2 The post office? It's over there, next to the café.
- W Ah yes, I can see it. Thanks. Sorry, I'm on holiday here and I don't know my way around.

M2 No problem. Bye.

W Goodbye.

M2 And have a nice holiday!

W Thanks a lot.

- 3 DAISY Excuse me. How do we get to the market? WOMAN You go along this street and over the bridge. That's New Road, and the market's on your left.
- D So that's, er, along this street, er ...
 JOSH Over the bridge and the market's on the left.
- W Yes, in New Road. You can't miss it.
- D How far is it?
- W Oh, it's not far. Only about five minutes' walk.
- D Great. Thanks a lot. Right, let's go. Do you remember the way? I never listen when people give me directions ...

CD3 > 39

ELLIE Hello?

MIKE Hello, Aunt Ellie. This is Mike. I'm calling from England about Ian and Amy's wedding. Is this a good time to call?

E Mike! Yes, of course it is. Oh, dear.
I never replied to your email, did I?
Sorry, I'm very bad at emails. But
we're all very happy that you're
coming over for Jan's wedding.

M Yes, that's what I'm calling about.

Can I stay with you when I get there?

Or should I book a hotel?

E Oh, I'm afraid there isn't any room in our house because Amy's parents are staying with us for a week.

- But if you want, I can book a hotel room for you nearby.
- M Yes, that would be great, thanks a lot.
- E And your uncle says you can
 use his motorbike if you want to
 travel around after the wedding.
 He doesn't use it much any more and
 he'd love you to ride it.

M Wow, that's fantastic! And what about getting to your place from Los Angeles airport? Should I get a taxi?

- E No, of course not! Just tell us what time your flight arrives and we can come and get you.
- M That's very kind of you, thanks a lot.
- E And I'm going to book a table at our favourite restaurant that evening so you can meet Amy's family.
- M Great! I'll email you my flight details this evening.
- E OK. See you in a couple of months.

 Would you like to speak to your uncle?
- M Yes, of course. ... Hello, Uncle Sid, how are you?

CD3 >41

/u/ look | book | woman | should | wood | sugar | good-looking /u:/ room | blue | June | suit | food | boots | choose

CD3 >43

sixteen million | four point two three | five hundred thousand | seven thousand, six hundred and fifty | three hundred and ninety | nought point one five | a hundred and seventy-two | ninety-eight thousand, five hundred

CD3 -44

ANSWERS a 73 hours b 5,350 litres c 182 kg d 35.6 kg e \$399 f one second g 152 hours h £8,000

CD3 >46

ABBY Do you like doing quizzes, Len? LEN Yes, I love them. Ask me the first question.

- A OK. What's the world's most expensive city? Moscow, Tokyo or Milan?
- L Mmm, that's a difficult question. Er ... this is a guess – Milan.
- A Just a minute. Er, no, it's Tokyo. Wow, it says here that a typical two-bedroom flat is about six thousand dollars a month.

L Really?

- A Yes. OK, next question. Which of these countries is the hottest Libya, the USA or Australia?
- L The hottest? I think it's Libya, isn't it?
- A Yes, that's right. It can have temperatures of fifty-seven point eight degrees. That's really hot!
- L OK, what's the next question?

- A Question three. Which of these cities is the oldest - Athens, Rome or Damascus?
- L Oh, I know this one. It's Damascus.

A Yes, you're right!

- L It's eight thousand years old.
- A How do you know that?
- I just read it in the newspaper.
- A Er, question four. Which of these countries is the most popular with tourists Spain, China or France?

L Oh, I don't know - France?

- A Yes, it's France, with seventy-four point two million visitors. That's three you've got right. Ah, this one is easier. Which is the longest river in the world? The Nile, the Amazon or the Yangtze?
- L Well, it's not the Yangtze. Er, I think it's the Amazon.
- A No, it's the Nile and it's six thousand, six hundred and fifty kilometres long.
- L Oh, right. So, is that the last question?
- A No, there's one more. Which is the world's most crowded country – Bangladesh, Singapore or Monaco?
- L Well, Monaco is the smallest country so perhaps it's the most crowded too.
- A Yes, that's right! Monaco has seventeen thousand people per square kilometre. You got four out of six right. Not bad!

CD3 >49

LUCY Are you enjoying the food?

STEVE Yes, it's wonderful. Guy's a great cook. How's business?

- L Oh, it's fine. Busy, you know. I really need a holiday.
- S Yes, me too.
- L But you're always on holiday!
- S No, I'm not. People always say that. I work very hard when I'm travelling.
- L Yeah, right. Have you ever been to Peru?
- S Yes, I have.
- L Did you have a good time?
- S Yes, I did. It's a fantastic country. The mountains are beautiful and the people are really friendly.
- L When did you go there?
- S About three years ago. Why do you ask?
- L Guy and I would like to go there for a holiday next year.
- S Yes, it's a great place to visit. I'd like to go to Australia. Have you ever been there?
- Yes, I have, actually. I went there about eight years ago, with my brother.
- S And did you enjoy it?
- L Oh, yes, we had a wonderful time. We travelled around in an old car for three months and camped every night.
- S Mmm, it sounds great.

GUY Is the food OK, Steve?

- S Yes, very good, as usual. Guy, have you ever been to Australia?
- G No, I haven't. I never leave this restaurant!

CD3 >50

Have you ever been to Peru? Yes, I have. Have you ever been to Australia? No, I haven't. Have you ever worked in a restaurant? Yes, I have. Have you ever met someone from Ireland? No, I haven't. Have you ever seen a Japanese film? Yes, I have. Have you ever worked in an office? No, I haven't.

VIDEO 12.1 CD3 51

MAN Hello. Can I have your passport, please?

DAISY Yes. Here you are. ...

- M How many bags are you checking in?
- D One. ...
- M Did you pack your bag yourself?
- D Yes, I did. ...
- M And have you got any hand luggage?
- D Yes, this bag.
- M OK. ... Here's your boarding pass. You're in seat 16F.
- D Is that a window seat?
- M No, an aisle seat.
- D Oh, OK. Which gate is it?
- M Gate 12.
- D Is the flight on time?
- M Yes, it is. Boarding is at 15.30. Enjoy your flight.
- D Thanks. Bye.
- M Bye.

VIDEO 12.2 CD3 53

ALISON Now, have you got everything? DAISY Yes, I have, thanks.

- A Have you got your boarding pass?
- D Yes, I have, thanks.

WAYNE So, is the flight on time?

- D Yes, it is.
- W OK. Well, have a good trip.
- D Thanks, I will.
- W And don't forget to send us a text when you get to Thailand.
- D Yes, of course.
- A And don't forget to send your grandmother a postcard.
- D I will. Don't worry.
- A OK, have a good time, Daisy.
- D Thanks, Mum, I will.
- W See you in a month.
- D Yes, see you. Bye, Mum. Bye, Dad.
- A Bye.
- W Bye.

CD3 > 54

/i:/ cheese, leave, week
/əu/ boat, note, snow
/b/ cough, often, wash
/a/ sunny, money, young
/ə/ sofa, second, woman
/ɔ:/ shorts, call, four
/ɜ:/ shirt, heard, word
/i/ build, live, thin
/æ/ hat, bank, hand
/et/ hate, great, train

/u/ look, would, foot /u:/ room, fruit, lose

CD3 >55

Listening Test (See Teacher's Book)

Phonemic Symbols

Vowel sounds

/ə/	/æ/	/ʊ/	/D/	/1/	/i/	/e/	/\/
fath <u>er</u> ago	<u>a</u> pple c <u>a</u> t	b <u>oo</u> k c <u>ou</u> ld	<u>o</u> n <u>go</u> t	<u>i</u> n sw <u>i</u> m	happy easy	b <u>e</u> d <u>a</u> ny	c <u>u</u> p <u>u</u> nder
/3 : / h <u>er</u> sh <u>ir</u> t	/q:/ arm car	/u:/	/ɔː/ b <u>or</u> n w <u>al</u> k	/i:/ eat meet			
/eə/ ch <u>air</u> wh <u>ere</u>	/IƏ/ n <u>ea</u> r h <u>ere</u>	/ʊə/ t <u>ou</u> r mat <u>ure</u>	/ DI / boy noisy	/aɪ/	/eɪ/	/ Ə U/	/aʊ/ out br <u>ow</u> n

Consonant sounds

/p/	/b/	/f/	/v/	/t/	/d/	/k/	/g/
park soup	<u>b</u> e ro <u>b</u>	<u>face</u> laugh	<u>v</u> ery li <u>v</u> e	time white	<u>d</u> og re <u>d</u>	<u>c</u> old loo <u>k</u>	girl bag
θ/θ	/ð/	/tʃ/	/dʒ/	/s/	/ Z /	/ʃ/	/3/
	mo <u>th</u> er <u>th</u> e	chips teach	job page	see rice	<u>z</u> oo day <u>s</u>	shoe action	televi <u>s</u> ion
/m/	/n/	/ŋ/	/h/	/1/	/r/	/w/	/j/
me name	now rain	si <u>ng</u> thi <u>n</u> k	hot hand	late hello	ma <u>rry</u> <u>wr</u> ite	we white	you yes

Irregular Verb List

infinitive	Past Simple	past participle	infinitive	Past Simple	past participle
be	was/were	been	leave	left	left
become	became	become	lose	lost	lost
begin	began	begun	make	made	made
break	broke	broken	meet	met	met
bring	brought /bro:t/	brought /bro:t/	pay	paid	paid
buy	\t:cd\ thguod	bought /bo:t/	put	put	put
can	could	been able	read	read /red/	read /red/
catch	caught /ko:t/	caught /ko:t/	ride	rode	ridden
choose	chose	chosen	run	ran	run
come	came	come	say	said /sed/	said /sed/
cost	cost	cost	see	saw /so:/	seen
cut	cut	cut	sell	sold	sold
do	did	done /dʌn/	send	sent	sent
drink	drank	drunk	sing	sang	sung
drive	drove	driven	sit	sat	sat
eat	ate	eaten	sleep	slept	slept
fall	fell	fallen	speak	spoke	spoken
feel	felt	felt	spell	spelled/spelt	spelled/spelt
find	found	found	spend	spent	spent
fly	flew /flu:/	flown /flaun/	stand	stood	stood
forget	forgot	forgotten	swim	swam	swum
get	got	got (US: gotten)	take	took	taken
give	gave	given	teach	taught /to:t/	taught /to:t/
go	went	been/gone	tell	told	told
have	had	had	think	thought /00:t/	thought /00:t/
hear	heard /hs:d/	heard /h3:d/	understand	understood	understood
hold	held	held	wear	worn	worn
know	knew /nju:/	known /nəun/	win	won	won
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt	write	wrote	written

Self-study DVD-ROM Instructions What's on the Self-study DVD-ROM?

- over 300 exercises to practise all language areas
- a Review Video for each unit which appears only on the Self-study DVD-ROM
- My Tests and My Progress sections
- an interactive Phonemic Symbols chart
- an e-Portfolio with Grammar Reference, Word List and Word Cards practice tool, plus a My Work section where you can build a digital portfolio of your work
- the main audio recordings from the Student's Book



Check My Progress to see your

scores for completed activities.

System requirements

of vowel and consonant sounds.

Windows

- Intel Pentium 4 2GHz or faster
- Microsoft® Windows® XP (SP3), Vista® (SP2), Windows 7
- Minimum 1GB RAM
- · Minimum 750MB of hard drive space
- Adobe® Flash® Player 10.3.183.7 or later

Mac OS

- Intel Core™ Duo 1.83GHz or faster
- Mac OSX 10.5 or later
 Minimum 10B BAM
- Minimum 1GB RAM
- Minimum 750MB of hard drive space
- Adobe® Flash® Player 10.3.183.7 or later

Installing the Self-study DVD-ROM to your hard disk

 Insert the face2face Second edition Elementary Self-study DVD-ROM into your CD/DVD drive. The DVD-ROM will automatically start to install. Follow the installation instructions on your screen.

Explore the e-Portfolio.

- On a Windows PC, if the DVD-ROM does not automatically start to install, open
 My Computer, locate your CD/DVD drive and open it to view the contents of the
 DVD-ROM. Double-click on the CambridgeApplicationInstaller file. Follow the
 installation instructions on your screen.
- On a Mac, if the DVD-ROM does not automatically start to install, double-click on the face2face DVD icon on your desktop. Double-click on the CambridgeApplicationInstaller file. Follow the installation instructions on your screen.

Support

If you need help with installing the DVD-ROM, please visit: www.cambridge.org/elt/support

face2face SECOND EDITION

Elementary Student's Book

Chris Redston & Gillie Cunningham

face2face Second edition is a fully updated and redesigned edition of this best-selling general English course for adults and young adults who want to learn quickly and effectively in today's world. Based on the communicative approach, it combines the best in current methodology with innovative new features designed to make learning and teaching easier. Vocabulary and grammar are given equal importance and there is a strong focus on listening and speaking in social situations. Each double-page lesson is easily teachable off the page with minimal preparation.

Key features

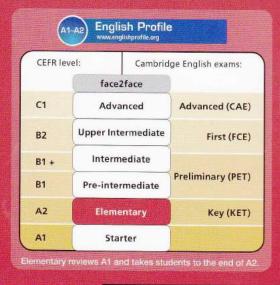
- NEW video presentation material for the doublepage Real World lessons, which focus on the functional and social language students need for day-to-day life. This video material is available on the new Teacher's DVD.
- NEW Help with Pronunciation sections enable students to improve their pronunciation and help them to communicate more effectively.
- NEW design and user-friendly signposting for easy navigation.
- NEW Vocabulary selection is informed by English Vocabulary Profile in addition to the Cambridge International Corpus and Cambridge Learner Corpus.

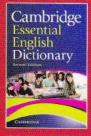
- Interactive Self-study DVD-ROM has fully updated exercises in all language areas, including video, record-and-listen capability, progress check, customisable tests and e-Portfolio.
- Full-page Extra Practice sections for each unit provide further controlled practice for all new language.
- Innovative Help with Listening sections help students to understand natural spoken English in context (Class Audio CDs are available separately.)
- Quick Reviews at the beginning of each lesson get each class off to a lively, student-centred start.
- The redesigned Language Summary includes all new vocabulary, grammar and functional language.

The face2face Second edition Elementary Student's Book provides 80 hours of core teaching material, which can be extended to 120 hours with the inclusion of the photocopiable resources (including the new Extra Reading worksheets) in the Teacher's Book (now with new Teacher's DVD).

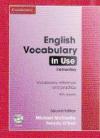
face2face Second edition is fully compatible with the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR) and gives students regular opportunities to evaluate their progress.

Visit www.cambridge.org/elt/face2face for more free learning resources.









ISBN 978 0 521 13617 4

CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH CORPUS The Cambridge English Corpus is a

The Cambridge English Corpus is a multi-billion word collection of written and spoken English. It includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique bank of exam candidate papers.

Our authors study the Corpus to see how English is really used, and to identify typical learner mistakes. This means that Cambridge materials help students to avoid mistakes, and you can be confident the language taught is useful, natural and fully up-to-date.

www.cambridge.org/corpus

CAMBRIDGE QUALITY GUARANTEE

